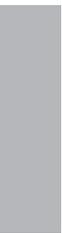
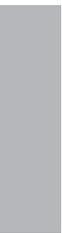


# Manual



## Notes on Table Numbers



## Table 1. Standard Subdivisions

### T1—01

#### Philosophy and theory

The term philosophy and theory is treated as a single concept, covering the general or abstract principles applied to a field of activity or thought, such as science or art. Use T1—01 for a work discussing the discipline itself as a discipline, rather than its subject matter. Do not use T1—01 where theory constitutes the bulk of the subject matter of a field, e.g., nuclear physics. In philosophy subdivisions of 100, T1—01 itself is seldom used, though its subdivisions may be, and then only in the sense of theory and method of the topic.

#### Criticism

Use T1—01 for techniques and principles of criticism of a discipline. However, class the criticism itself in the same number as the subject of the criticism, e.g., criticism of Browning's poetry 821.8, criticism of Frank Lloyd Wright's architecture 720.92, criticism of Italian cooking 641.5945.

### T1—015 vs. T1—0245–0246

#### Scientific principles vs. The subject for people in scientific and technological occupations

Use the number for the technology plus notation 015 from Table 1 for the scientific principles of a technology, e.g., mathematical principles of engineering 620.00151. In such cases the table of contents will often be organized by concepts found in subdivisions of the technology or will follow the table of contents found in common treatises on the technology. Conversely, use the number for the science plus notation 024 from Table 1 for the science if the work is written for technologists and engineers, e.g., mathematics for engineers 510.2462. In such cases the table of contents will be organized by concepts found in subdivisions of the science or will follow the table of contents found in common treatises on the science. If in doubt between science and technology, prefer the technology number.

#### When not to use either subdivision

Do not use T1—015 and T1—024 in 500 and 600 when there is a direct relationship between a science and a corresponding technology, e.g., do not use 540.2466 for chemistry for chemical engineers, or 660.0154 for chemical principles in chemical engineering.

### T1—0207 vs. T3B—7, T3A—8 + 02, T3B—802, T3B—8 + 02, T3A—8 + 07, T3B—807, T3B—8 + 07

#### Humor, satire, jokes

Any subject may be dealt with in a humorous or satirical manner. Use the number for the subject without T1—0207 for works where the humor involved is entirely incidental to the serious treatment of the subject, e.g., a joke inserted into a lecture to provide respite from a serious mood. Use the number for the subject plus notation 0207 from Table

1 for works where the author's intention is serious, but where humor or satire is used to convey the author's message, e.g., political satire grounded in genuine political criticism. Use numbers in literature, usually T3B—802 (or T3A—8 + 02 or T3B—8 + 02), only for works where the subject merely provides the occasion for humor, the author's primary concern being to amuse, e.g., a collection of jokes about cats. If in doubt between literature and the subject, prefer the subject. If in doubt whether to use T1—0207, prefer the subject without it.

Use T3B—802 (or T3A—8 + 02 or T3B—8 + 02) for jokes; use T3B—807 (or T3A—8 + 07 or T3B—8 + 07) for humorous literary works without identifiable literary form. Use T3B—7 only for collections of humor or satire in more than one literary form, including both verse and prose. (Class works in a particular literary form, e.g., drama or fiction, with the form; class works in multiple forms of literary prose with prose.)

### **T1—0222 vs. T1—0223**

#### **Pictures and related material vs. Maps, plans, diagrams**

Use T1—0222 for charts that are basically pictures of things, T1—0223 for charts that are basically maps or diagrams. Use T1—0222 for designs that give a visual impression of what something does or will look like, e.g., architectural drawings; use T1—0223 for designs that show details on horizontal or vertical planes (often as a preliminary to construction), or the arrangement and relations of parts showing how something works. Use T1—0223 for atlases, which are usually compilations of maps, plans, or diagrams, unless they are compilations of pictorial material. Use T1—0222 for anatomical atlases, which are usually picture-like. Use 001–999 without adding either standard subdivision for atlases that are simply heavily illustrated texts on a subject.

Use T1—0222 for comprehensive works, e.g., architectural drawings and plans 720.222. If in doubt between T1—0222 and T1—0223, prefer T1—0222.

### **T1—024**

#### **The subject for people in specific occupations**

Use T1—024 for works that emphasize special instructions for people in specific occupations that general readers would not find useful, e.g., mathematics for engineers 510.2462. Do not use T1—024 for works that draw examples from one broad discipline or for one kind of professional user, but effectively cover the subject for the general reader, e.g., use 616.12 (*not* 616.12002461073) for a textbook on cardiology for nurses that would be equally useful to patients, relatives, or social workers.

Do not use T1—024 when it is redundant, that is, when it is directed towards people who would typically be expected to study the subject, e.g., engineering for engineers 620 (*not* 620.002462).

### **T1—025 vs. T1—029**

#### **Directories of enterprises and products**

Use T1—025 for directories that describe business enterprises in a manner that serves people who run businesses; who invest in or lend money to businesses; or who want to sell ideas, products, and services to businesses. These directories typically emphasize organization, officers, and financial information. Use T1—029 for directories and catalogs designed to help customers obtain or evaluate products and services. If in doubt, prefer T1—025.

**Directories of business and related enterprises**

The guidelines in this section apply to directories that concentrate on enterprises and provide significant information about their organization, and sometimes also their officers, finances, and line of work. Use T1—025 with numbers from 001–999 for directories of persons and organizations that do not concentrate on enterprises, or that simply supply their names, addresses, and contact persons.

*Limited to specific industries*

Use T1—025 with subdivisions of 338.76 and related numbers for directories of enterprises in specific industries that emphasize organization, officers, and financial information. Related numbers are subdivisions of 338.8 that are divided by industry for business combinations; 332.1–.6 for financial institutions; 333.33 for real estate businesses; 334 for cooperative enterprises; 368 for insurance enterprises; and 380 for enterprises engaged in commerce, communications, and transportation.

Because “organization” is a basic element of 338.76 and related numbers, the guidelines in the Manual note T1—025 vs. T1—0601–0609 do not apply. Use notation 025 from Table 1 with these numbers for listings of companies, even if there is significant general information on the companies.

In most cases, the arrangement of a directory by enterprises points to use of T1—025 with subdivisions of 338.76 and related numbers, unless there is a predominance of detail on products and services. In that case, use T1—029 as instructed below. If in doubt, however, prefer T1—025.

*Not limited to specific industries*

Use T1—025 with 338.7, 338.8, and their general subdivisions (those not limited to specific industries) for directories of enterprises that are not limited to a specific industry, e.g., directories of all business enterprises in France 338.702544, directories of multinational enterprises 338.88025.

Use 338.74025 only for directories explicitly limited to corporations. If the limitation is not explicitly stated, prefer 338.7025.

Use 338.767025 for directories of manufacturers that give financial and organizational information.

Use T1—025 with numbers in 381–382 for directories of merchants. Use 381.025 and 382.025 for chambers of commerce and boards of trade, even when the membership includes a wide cross section of business enterprises in an area.

Use T1—025 with numbers in 914–919 for telephone, city, and fax directories, and for business white pages (telephone directories largely limited to businesses) and yellow pages that are issued with general directories of people and organizations in an area. Use 338.7025, however, for business white pages and comprehensive fax directories of businesses that are not produced in connection with a directory of all people and organizations, and 338.02029 for yellow pages that are not produced in connection with a directory of all people and organizations.

### Product and service directories and catalogs

Product and service directories may go by a variety of names, including trade catalogs and yellow pages. Yellow pages are usually not limited by specific industries. The guidelines in this section also apply to buyers' guides and consumer reports.

#### *Limited to specific industries*

Use T1—029 with numbers from 001–999 (other than 338.47 and related numbers) for directories of products and services in specific industries, e.g., information services 025.04029, chemical products of United States 660.02973, food and drink in Europe 664.00294. In all cases, use the number that represents making the products or producing the services, except when they are produced by three or more industries serving a single consumer industry. In such cases, use the number for the consumer industry, e.g., a directory of publishers, binders, and furniture makers serving libraries 020.29.

#### *Not limited to specific industries*

Use 338.4029 for wide-ranging product directories that emphasize products of secondary industries, or services and products of secondary industries. Use 338.02029 for wide-ranging directories that cover everything from farm produce and minerals to the output of secondary industries. If in doubt, prefer 338.4029.

Use 338.4029 (*not* 670.29) for directories of manufactured products, as they are then usefully classed with other comprehensive or wide-ranging directories.

Use 338.4700029 for comprehensive directories of services.

### **T1—025 vs. T1—0601–0609**

#### **Directories of persons and organizations vs. Organizations**

Use T1—025 for works covering several or many organizations containing directory information, even if not called directories, i.e., works that supply addresses, key officers or contact people, phone numbers, and brief statements of purpose. These works may include directory information about component parts of individual organizations, and/or a limited amount of general information on structure and component parts. However, use T1—06 if there is significant general information (more than a page) per organization. Use T1—0601–0609 for works covering history, charters, regulations, membership lists, and administrative reports of an organization, and also for conference programs of an organization and organizational handbooks.

Use T1—06 for a combined organizational handbook and membership directory, even if the membership part predominates. However, use T1—025, plus the Table 2 notation for the area that the organization serves, if the organizational part consists of only a few preliminary pages followed by an extensive directory of members.

Use T1—025 for a membership list that includes addresses, as that is counted as a directory.

If in doubt, prefer T1—025.

*See also discussion at T1—025 vs. T1—029.*

**T1—0285****Computer applications**

Use T1—0285 for comprehensive works on data processing applied to a subject. Also use T1—0285 if 004 is the interdisciplinary number for the applied concept, e.g., digital computers T1—0285. Do not use T1—02854 by itself, since the digit 4 simply repeats the meaning of notation 0285. However, it is not redundant to add to T1—0285 the notation for subdivisions of 004, e.g., digital personal computers T1—0285416.

Do not add the digit 4 by itself to a number divided like 004–006 if the base number is limited to data processing and computer concepts, e.g., 651.8, 658.05.

**Electronic resources and programs**

Use T1—028553 for programs themselves and for works about programs, regardless of form (e.g., programs in electronic form, printed program listings bound into books). Do not use T1—0285 to indicate that a work is in electronic form, e.g., use 310 (*not* 310.285) for electronic census data.

Do not use T1—028553 for items that include both programs and data files, unless the data files are clearly of minor importance, e.g., small files intended merely to help beginners learn to use the programs.

If in doubt, do not use T1—028553.

**T1—0601–0609****Organizations**

Use subdivisions in T1—0601–0609 primarily for membership organizations and associations, but also for a selection of nonmembership institutions, foundations, and agencies that do not belong to the categories listed in class-elsewhere notes under T1—0601–0609. However, do not use T1—06 for nonmembership organizations if “organization” is inherent in the subject. For example, except as indicated below, do not use T1—06 with most subdivisions in 360 for social services. Under such numbers, use T1—09 for the basic organizations in specific areas, and for specific basic organizations, e.g., hospitals in China 362.110951. However, use T1—06 for associations that include the basic organizations and their staffs as members, e.g., hospital associations in China 362.1106051.

Use T1—06 also for administrative (in contrast to service) histories of institutions, e.g., administrative histories of hospitals (362.1106) or police agencies (363.206). Do not confuse these histories with how-to works on management, which are classed in T1—068.

Do not use T1—06 for membership organizations if “membership organization” is inherent in the subject, e.g., in 366 Associations or 061–068 General organizations. T1—06 is not used with numbers for a religion because of the ambiguity of membership organization in religion, e.g., 296.06 is bracketed, and a reference leads to 296.67 where membership is inherent in the organization number.

**Selection of area number**

For membership organizations, use the area that is the chief focus of the membership, e.g., American Medical Association 610.6073. For local affiliated associations or chapters that have their own name, use the area number of the local organization, e.g., Mas-

sachusetts Medical Association 610.60744. For offices and chapters that take the name of the parent body, use the number of the parent organization, e.g., the Washington office of the American Medical Association 610.6073 (*not* 610.60753).

For nonmembership organizations, institutions, foundations, and conferences, use the area number of the headquarters. Also use the number of the headquarters for membership organizations whose area cannot be determined.

## T1—068

### Management

The subdivisions of T1—068 parallel the subdivisions of 658. Use 658 as a guide to selecting the correct subdivision of T1—068, e.g., information management 658.4038, therefore information management applied to automobile manufacturing 629.2220684.

## T1—068 vs. 353–354

### Public administration and management in specific fields

Use numbers outside 350–354 plus notation 068 from Table 1 for the management or administration of organizations, public or private, that directly perform the work within their scope. Use numbers in 353–354 for agencies that regulate, control, or support organizations that provide the actual services. For example, use 363.2068 (*not* 353.36216) for management of city police departments; use 364.62068 (*not* 353.39) for management of parole boards; use 385.068 (*not* 354.767) for management of a nationalized railway system.

A given field may have both public administration and management aspects. For example, use 385.068 for managing railroads, but use 354.76728 for managing agencies that regulate railroads; use 025.1974 for administering public libraries, but use 353.73 for administering agencies that support public libraries.

### Exceptions

Use 353–354 for administration of activities specific to government (such as licensing, taxing, and gathering census information, that is, activities found in 352 that are not also found in 658) when applied to specific fields of public administration.

Foreign affairs are among the few major activities for which administration of an actual operation is classed in 353–354. Use 353.13 (*not* 327.068 or numbers in 327.3–.9, plus notation 068 from Table 1) for foreign affairs management. Similarly, use 353.17 (*not* 327.12068 or numbers in 327.123–.129 plus notation 068 from Table 1) for foreign intelligence management.

If in doubt, prefer the number outside public administration.

## T1—072 vs. T1—0601–0609

### Research vs. Organizations

Use T1—072 for organizations that conduct research, e.g., agricultural research stations in the United States 630.72073; but use T1—06 for membership organizations that primarily promote research, e.g., the American Association for the Advancement of Science 506.073. If in doubt, prefer T1—072.

*See also discussion at T1—07201–07209 vs. T1—0721.*

**T1—07201–07209 vs. T1—0721****Geographic treatment of research vs. Research methods**

Use the geographic treatment span for works on research in progress or being planned, or for works that consist of general descriptions of research projects and do not emphasize the research method. Also use the geographic treatment span for works on research organizations that perform or sponsor all or most of the research in their fields, even if they have names like agricultural experiment stations.

Do not use notation for a specific research method when it is redundant, e.g., historical research in history, experimental research in an experimental science such as chemistry.

However, use T1—0723 for surveys and data collection projects that concentrate on specific areas and concentrate on a single survey rather than on a number of projects.

If in doubt, prefer T1—07201–07209.

**T1—074 vs. T1—029****Museums, collections, exhibits vs. Commercial miscellany**

Use T1—074 for catalogs whose primary purpose is to promote knowledge or art, such as catalogs of collections; use T1—029 for catalogs whose primary purpose is to promote sale or distribution of products. Use T1—074 for catalogs of replicas, duplicates, and minor items when offered for sale in museum- or exhibit-like settings by noncommercial institutions. Also use T1—074 for auction catalogs (e.g., in art), and for catalogs of temporary exhibits of groups of artists, even if a succession of such exhibits provides most of the artists with their primary source of income. If in doubt, prefer T1—074.

**T1—08 and 306.2–.6****Cultural institutions and groups of people**

Use the interdisciplinary number for a topic pertaining to a cultural institution plus notation 08 from Table 1 for works on groups of people in relation to a cultural institution, e.g., racism in sports 796.089 (*not* 306.483), women in science 500.82 (*not* 306.45), police discrimination against minorities 363.208 (*not* 306.28). If the interdisciplinary number for the cultural institution falls in 306.2–.6, use the number for the institution or related topic plus notation 08 from Table 1, e.g., discrimination against retired women 306.38082.

**T1—08****Groups of people**

Unless there are instructions to the contrary, use T1—08 as needed for the following:

1. Groups of people associated with a topic in any of various ways, e.g., people who study a subject, people who teach a subject; people who provide services, people who benefit from services
2. Comprehensive works on minorities, e.g., minorities of all kinds (T1—08), ethnic and national minorities (T1—089)
3. General concepts associated with groups of people, e.g., discrimination, group identity, special viewpoints on a subject

For example, use 780.82 (built with 78 from 780 Music plus T1—082 Women) for women performers of music, for women who compose music, and for feminist views of music.

Sometimes provision is made for specifying groups of people directly, not through T1—08, or for expressing one aspect of groups of people in a different place. In that case, a number built with T1—08 appears with a do-not-use note. If the built number is not bracketed, use that built number and its unbracketed subdivisions as needed for all the possible meanings of T1—08 except those meanings forbidden by the do-not-use note. For example, the entry for 253.08 Groups of people (built with 253 Pastoral work [Pastoral theology] plus T1—08) has both a do-not-use note and a class-here note:

Do not use for pastoral care of specific groups of people; class in 259

Class here pastoral care performed by groups of people

The class-here note at 253.08 does not limit what can be classed in 253.08 and its subdivisions; the note merely indicates the main topic that one would expect to be classed there. Thus 253.082 Women can be used for feminist views of pastoral care as well as for pastoral care performed by women.

#### **T1—081 and T1—08351, T1—08352, T1—08421, T1—08422**

##### **Men and women, Males twelve to twenty and females twelve to twenty, Young men and young women**

Use subdivisions for men and women only if the works explicitly emphasize the sex of the people treated. For example, do not use 363.370811 for men as a group with respect to fire fighting unless the work makes clear that *male* fire fighters are being contrasted with *female* fire fighters, or 364.3608351 for juvenile delinquents (a term often implying young men under eighteen) unless *male* delinquents are being contrasted to *female* delinquents.

#### **T1—0882 and 200**

##### **Religious groups and Religion**

Use subdivisions of T1—0882 in 200 to represent official or semiofficial positions of denominations and sects, e.g., Catholic teachings on socioeconomic problems 261.8088282.

Do not use T1—0882 for works of an individual except in the rare cases in which an individual's view has become an official statement of a group. That is, use 261.8 (*not* 261.8088282) for writings on Christian attitudes towards socioeconomic problems by persons who happen to be Catholic.

#### **T1—09 vs. T1—089**

##### **History, geographic treatment, biography vs. Ethnic and national groups**

Use T1—09, not T1—089, to identify distinguishing characteristics of a subject in an area where a specific group of people lives, e.g., Arab architecture 720.9174927 (*not* 720.89927); French desserts 641.860944 (*not* 641.8608941).

##### **Regions where specific ethnic groups predominate**

Do not use T1—09174 (regions where specific ethnic groups predominate) for treatment as groups of people since such use would practically duplicate the ethnic group

numbers. For example, Arabs living in all areas where Arabs predominate constitute the overwhelming majority of all Arabs; therefore, use T1—089927 for treatment of Arabs as a group, and use T1—09174927 only for works about the area where they live, and works about styles prevailing in areas where they live.

## T1—0901–0905

### Historical periods

Do not use historical periods for subjects that have no significant history outside the period indicated, e.g., the history of railroads 385.09 (*not* 385.0903), but the history of railroads during the 19th century 385.09034. If in doubt, do not use periods.

Do not use the most recent period subdivision for works on current practice or the state of the art of a subject, since most users will expect to find these works in the base number. However, use the latest period number when the nature of the subject requires attention to the changing situation, e.g., 320.90511 for world political conditions in 2000–2009.

Use earlier historical periods only for retrospective works, not for contemporary works. For example, use 781.09032 for a current work on music theory of the baroque, but use 781 for a reprint of a treatise on music theory written in 1620 (when baroque music was in style).

## T1—092

### Biography

The following instructions apply also to notation 2 from Table 2 when numbers from Table 2 are added directly without the interposition of T1—09.

In the following notes the word “biography” is used for stylistic convenience; however, the instructions apply fully to description and critical appraisal as well as other aspects of treatment of individuals.

Do not use T1—092 for the actual works of a person except where instructed to do so at certain numbers in 700–779.

*See also discussion at Table 3A: Biography; also at 170.92 vs. 171; also at 230–280; also at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299; also at 220.92; also at 297.092; also at 300 vs. 600: Biography and company history; also at 338.092; also at 362.1–4 vs. 610; also at 610.92 vs. 615.534092; also at 615.53: Biography; also at 700.92; also at 709.2 vs. 381.457092; also at 779 vs. 770.92; also at 780.92 and 791.092; also at 780.92; also at 781.6; also at 784–788; also at 913–919: Add table: 04: Biography; also at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362; also at 920.009, 920.03–.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–.8, 930–990; also at 930–990: Wars: Personal narratives; also at 930–990: Biography.*

### Comprehensive biography

Use the number for the subject of the person’s most noted contribution for the comprehensive biography of the person. If the person made approximately equal contributions to a number of fields, use the number for the subject that provides the best common denominator, giving some extra consideration to the person’s occupation. For example, use the university’s area number under 378 for a physicist who became a science teacher, then head of a school of science, but went on to become a university president. Use 300.92 for a person who made significant contributions in political science, in university education, and the study of administrative and economic aspects of utility regulation, since that number provides the best common denominator for his work. However, use

610.92 for a famous woman doctor who also served as a feminist leader, wrote minor novels, and often served as a delegate to political conventions, unless there is an obvious emphasis on her avocations. Give weight to designations listed first in biographical dictionaries, but make allowances for the tendency to list occupation first even when a career transcends occupation.

If in doubt between a number for a discipline and a number for a specific subject within the discipline, prefer the number for the discipline, e.g., use 620.0092 rather than 621.092 for a mechanical engineer who also did important work in transportation and construction engineering.

### *Public figures*

Biographies of public figures frequently present difficulties because the person may have filled several positions that are given varying emphasis by different authors, or may have filled one position that had many facets. Use 930–990 for comprehensive works on persons who held such positions. However, use a number reflecting one position or interest of a person's career if a biography emphasizes this, e.g., use 362.1092 for a biography emphasizing Wayne Morse's promotion of the National Institutes of Health, even though he was a U.S. senator. (*See also Partial biography, below.*)

A public figure may exert a wide-ranging impact upon the history of the jurisdiction served. For example, Daniel Webster is most famous as a U.S. senator, although he served twice as secretary of state and was also a lawyer and orator. In all these roles he influenced the history of his time. Use 973.5092 for his biography, rather than 328.73092 for his senatorial service, 327.730092 for his foreign relations service, or 349.73092 for his legal activities. However, if a person in a high office of general responsibility concentrated on a single important field, consider a number that identifies that field. For example, William Wilberforce's chief interest while serving as a British Member of Parliament was the abolition of slavery. Thus use 326.8092 for his biography, rather than 941.073092 for his impact on the general history of his period or 328.41092 for his legislative work.

Give greatest weight to the highest office reached, unless there is a clear reason to do otherwise, using the following table of preference:

1. Use 930–990 for monarchs, presidents, other heads of state, prime ministers, vice presidents, and regents, using the number for the period during which they held office. Also use 930–990 for public figures of any position or combination of positions who had a significant impact upon general history, using the period numbers that best approximate their period of influence. Candidates of major parties for the highest office of a country are also assigned history numbers, generally using the number for the period during which they ran for office, e.g., use 973.68092 for Stephen Douglas, who ran against Lincoln in 1860. Sometimes a candidate defeated for party nomination made enough difference in the outcome to warrant a history number for his comprehensive biography, e.g., use 973.923092 for Eugene McCarthy, who ran unsuccessfully for the Democratic presidential nomination in 1968.
2. Use the number for the field of service for cabinet members, e.g., use 327.440092 for a foreign minister of France.
3. Use 327.3–.9 for ambassadors and pre-World War II ministers plenipotentiary.
4. Use 328.4–.9 for legislators not warranting a specific subject number, e.g., a floor leader, whip, or member noted for promoting legislative work. Biographers tend to concentrate upon legislators who left their mark on general history; so always con-

sider the number in 900 for the area the legislature served before assigning another. Only occasionally will a work focus on a legislator's own constituency.

5. Use 327.3--9 for diplomats below the level of ambassador or pre-World War II minister plenipotentiary; however, if associated with notable events, use the number for the events.

6. Use the number for field of service for public administrators not holding cabinet positions, if their contribution to the service was significant, e.g., use 363.25092 for J. Edgar Hoover, director of the U.S. Federal Bureau of Investigation; otherwise use 352--354.

Use the same preference for public figures of state, provincial, and local jurisdictions. Usually national office takes preference over other levels, but consider the weight of contributions. For example, DeWitt Clinton, the famous governor of New York, was briefly U.S. senator, and was a minor party candidate for president, but use 974.703092 for New York State history of his time for his comprehensive biography. Fiorello La Guardia served fourteen years as U.S. representative, and briefly as chief of the U.S. Office of Civilian Defense and as director of the United Nations Relief and Rehabilitation Administration; but use 974.71042092 for his biography, as he is best known as mayor of New York City.

### Systems and laws named after people

Do not use T1--092 for a system or law named after a single individual, but *do* use it for treatment of the individual emphasizing biography, e.g., use 150.1952 for a work on Freudianism, but use 150.1952092 for a biography of Freud.

When an individual is named in a heading or notes, treat the system according to the standard rules for topics, but be liberal about adding notation 092 from Table 1 for treatment emphasizing the individual. For example, 576.52 (Laws of genetics) gives Mendel's laws in a class here note, so any subdivision may be added, e.g., use 576.5205 for serials on Mendel's laws, use 576.52092 for Mendel's biography. Conversely, 150.19434 (Neobehaviorism) gives systems of Guthrie, Hull, Skinner, Tolman in an including note, so standard subdivisions are not added, e.g., use 150.19434 for serials on systems of Skinner without addition of notation 05 from Table 1. However, use notation 092 for biographical treatment of any of these individuals, e.g., use 150.19434092 for a biography emphasizing Skinner's work on neobehaviorism.

### Families and close associates of the famous

Class a history of the immediate or extended family of a famous person with the biography of that person if the work strongly emphasizes the famous person. The same rule applies to the biography of a single relative or close associate of a famous person. However, if the relative or associate is important in his or her own right, or if the famous person is not strongly featured, class the life of the relative in the subject warranted by his or her own work, e.g., use 269.2092 for a biography of evangelist Ruth Carter Stapleton, sister of President Jimmy Carter, that treats the president only incidentally. If in doubt, do not use the number assigned to a famous person for a relative or close friend; prefer a number warranted by the biographee's own activities. Class a general family history in 929.2.

### Partial biography

Class each partial biography featuring a specific contribution of a person with the contribution. However, use the comprehensive biography number for a work about the portions of a person's life that preceded the activity with which the person is chiefly associated, unless the work has significant alternative subject emphasis. For example, use 796.42092 for British Member of Parliament Christopher Chataway's earlier life as an athlete; but use 954.045092 for the childhood of Indira Gandhi, the number for her period as prime minister of India.

### Biography associated with place rather than subject

Class an individual biography in the number most nearly covering the history and civilization of the place and time of the activity emphasized when a work is not clearly associated with any subject but is clearly associated with a place, even in cases when a person's activity may not approximate the whole of the most specific period, e.g., use 979.46104092 for the diary of a resident of San Francisco during the Gold Rush.

*See also discussion at T1—0922 vs. T1—093—099; also at 930—990: Biography.*

## T1—0922

### Collected biography

Use T1—0922 for a work on two people collaborating in the same field, e.g., the Wright brothers 629.1300922, Pierre and Marie Curie 530.0922. However, use T1—092 when the focus is strongly on one of the two.

Do not use area subdivisions for collected biography of groups that have a strong collective personal identity, even though all the members are known to have come from one particular area, e.g., the Beatles 782.421660922 (*not* 782.42166092242 or 782.42166092242753).

## T1—0922 vs. T1—093—099

### Collected biography vs. Specific continents, countries, localities

Collected biography covers description and critical appraisal of work, and geographic treatment covers description by place, by specific instance of the subject. Prefer T1—0922 over T1—093—099 for material limited by persons but emphasizing area aspects. However, use T1—093—099 when the intent of the author or compiler is to describe works of art characteristic of an area, or simply to describe such works in an area (even though the works may be listed under their producers). When the title and front matter do not reveal the intent, any discussion of style is an important indicator. A discussion focusing on the character and style of the individual producers indicates biography; one focusing on the characteristics of the place and times indicates geographic treatment. For example, use 730.92245 for a book on the style and character of sculptures by Cellini, Donatello, and Michelangelo, but use 730.94509024 for a book illustrating Italian Renaissance sculpture by describing the work of these same men. If in doubt, prefer T1—0922.

Use the area number if the text is largely confined to concise descriptions of works of technology or art (or to identifications and illustrations of them), even if persons are indicated in the title, e.g., descriptions of the works of six famous Italian sculptors 730.945.

---

However, use T1—092 without further subdivision for individual persons for all description and critical appraisal of works they have produced.

**T1—0940902 vs. T1—0902****Medieval period in European history vs. 6th-15th centuries, 500–1499**

Use T1—0940902 for works that are clearly focused on Europe in the Middle Ages and the medieval period, but use T1—0902 for works that attempt to cover the whole world during the period. However, the medieval record of many subjects outside Europe is poorly documented, so a work attempting worldwide coverage may in fact be predominantly about the subject in Europe. If in doubt, prefer T1—0940902.

## Table 2. Areas, Periods, Biography

### T2—162

#### Oceans and seas

Use T2—163–168 (*not* T2—3–9) for parts of oceans and noninland seas limited by either country or locality, e.g., use T2—16347 (*not* T2—752 or T2—7551) for Chesapeake Bay, an arm of the Atlantic Ocean that is almost surrounded by Maryland and Virginia.

#### Estuaries

Use the appropriate area number in T2—3–9 for estuaries that are parts of named rivers, but use T2—16 for estuaries that are parts of oceans and noninland seas, e.g., use T2—16347 (*not* T2—7553) for the York River, an estuary of the Chesapeake Bay.

#### Coastal waters

Use the number in T2—163–168 that includes the majority of the waters for comprehensive works on the coastal waters of a country, e.g., coastal waters of Russia T2—1632 (*not* T2—16334 or T2—16451), of the United States T2—1634 (*not* T2—16364 or T2—1643). If the areas are approximately equal in size, use the number coming first, e.g., coastal waters of Spain T2—16338 (*not* T2—16381), of Panama T2—16365 (*not* T2—1641).

### T2—163 and T2—164, T2—165

#### Atlantic, Indian, and Pacific Oceans

Table 2 divides the world ocean into three parts—Atlantic, Indian, and Pacific Oceans. The Arctic Ocean is considered a sea of the Atlantic. There is no Antarctic Ocean, but provision is made in T2—167 for the extreme southern portions of the three oceans.

Divisions between the oceans are as follows:

Atlantic-Pacific: north, Bering Strait; south, a line drawn southeasterly from Cape Horn to the northern tip of Palmer Peninsula, Antarctica

Pacific-Indian: north, a line from Melville Island to Timor, thence through the islands of Indonesia to Singapore Strait; south, a line drawn south from Cape Howe, Victoria, Australia, on the 150° east meridian

Indian-Atlantic: north, Suez Canal; south, a line drawn south from Cape Agulhas, South Africa, on the 20° east meridian

Use notes and references to decide where to class connecting bodies of water, e.g., Bering Strait T2—16451 (*not* T2—16325 or T2—16327).

### T2—3

#### Ancient world

The jurisdictions that existed in the ancient world are subdivided by modern regions and jurisdictions. For example, the ancient Iranian Plateau T2—357 is subdivided by the provinces of Iran, e.g., T2—35772 Persis is built using based notation 5572 from

Table 2 for Färs province. Ancient France T2—364 is subdivided by the regions and departments of modern France, e.g., T2—36439 Germania Superior is built using notation 4439 from Table 2 for Alsace.

## T2—4-9

### Modern world; extraterrestrial worlds

#### General arrangement of Table 2

The general arrangement of Table 2 is geographic rather than by political units, e.g., Hawaii T2—969 under Oceania, separated from the rest of the United States in T2—73-79; the Asian parts of Russia T2—57, separated from the European portion of Russia in T2—471-474.

#### Physiographic features and regions

Class a specific feature or region not named in the area table and that is wholly or almost wholly contained within a political or administrative unit with the unit; however, do not add further notation. For example, use T2—7421 for Mount Washington, New Hampshire; T2—75793 for Lake Moultrie, South Carolina; 917.5793 (*not* 917.579304) for travel connected with Lake Moultrie.

Class a river with the political or administrative unit in which the river's mouth is located, e.g., Escanaba River, Michigan T2—77494. However, if the upper part of the river is more important politically, economically, or culturally, class the river with that part, e.g., Tigris and Euphrates Rivers T2—5674 (*not* T2—5675).

Class general treatment of a specific kind of feature or region limited to a specific continent, country or locality with the continent, country, or locality plus notation 091 from the table under T1—093-099 in Table 1, e.g., rivers of Europe T2—4091693, rivers of England T2—42091693. However, do not add notation 091 for individual features or regions, e.g., Nile River of Egypt T2—62 (*not* T2—62091693). Class treatment of a specific kind of feature or region not limited to a specific continent in T2—1, e.g., rivers T2—1693.

#### Cities, towns, villages

Cities are not named in Table 2, except:

1. Major world cities, either with their own numbers, e.g., Amsterdam T2—492352, or in a note, e.g., Mecca T2—538
2. Smaller cities given their own numbers early in the development of the DDC, e.g., Guelph, Ontario T2—71343
3. The capital and largest city of each state of the United States, e.g., Pierre and Sioux Falls, South Dakota, at T2—78329 and T2—783371 respectively
4. Independent cities, e.g., Alexandria, Virginia T2—755296
5. United States cities coextensive with their counties (or parishes), e.g., Philadelphia T2—74811, San Francisco T2—79461
6. Cities, towns, and villages named to indicate boundaries of units when the boundaries are not readily available in reference works, e.g., throughout Australia T2—94 and the western provinces of Canada T2—711-712

Unless other instructions are given, class a metropolitan area with the central city, e.g., the metropolitan area of Chicago T2—77311. Standard subdivisions may be added if appropriate.

Class general treatment of urban regions limited to a specific continent, country or locality with the continent, country, or locality plus notation 091732 (derived from notation 091 from the table under T1—093—099), e.g., urban regions of Europe T2—4091732, urban regions of England T2—42091732. Class treatment of urban regions not limited to a specific continent in T2—1732.

*See also discussion at T2—41 and T2—42; also at T2—713 and T2—714; also at T2—93.*

### T2—4—9 vs. T2—3

#### **Modern world; extraterrestrial worlds vs. Ancient world**

Use T2—4—9 for those parts of the world more or less known to classical antiquity (the “Ancient world”) when considered after the period of “ancient history,” as well as other areas such as America in both ancient and later times. Use T2—3 for only the “Ancient world” during the period of “ancient history.” For example, use T2—51 for later China and T2—31 for ancient China; T2—5694 for later Palestine and T2—33 for ancient Palestine; T2—44 for France and T2—364 for ancient Gaul; but use T2—7265 for both ancient and later Yucatán. The demarcation date between “ancient” and “later” varies from place to place and can be determined by examination of the terminal dates in classes 931–939, e.g., 931 China to 420, 933 Palestine to 70, 936.4 Celtic regions to 486. If in doubt, prefer T2—4—9.

### T2—41 and T2—42

#### **Scotland and England**

The lower level authorities of England and the unitary authorities of England and Scotland may be referred to by a number of different names, most commonly District, Borough, or City. The term “City” does not necessarily refer to an urban locality. The Districts, Boroughs, and Cities are often named after an urban locality either within or approximately the same as the jurisdiction. If the urban locality is approximately the same as the jurisdiction, the locality is given in a class-here note. For example, Exeter City, the jurisdiction, and Exeter, the urban locality, are coextensive; thus, the table entry:

T2—42356	Exeter City
	Class here Exeter

If the urban locality is not approximately the same as the jurisdiction, only the jurisdiction is given. The classifier can assume that were the locality to be given, it would be in an including note. For example, Canterbury City, the jurisdiction, and Canterbury, the urban locality, are not coextensive; thus, the table entry:

T2—42234	Canterbury City
----------	-----------------

*See also discussion at T2—4—9: Cities, towns, villages.*

### T2—45

#### **Italy**

The second level administrations of Italy are province and metropolitan city. The second level administration “metropolitan city” does not refer to an urban locality. Each

metropolitan city is named after the main urban locality within it. In each case, the locality is given in a separate entry subordinate to the entry for the metropolitan city; thus, the entries:

T2—4541	Bologna Metropolitan City
	(Option: Class here Bologna Metropolitan City to 476; prefer --37261)
T2—45411	Bologna
	(Option: Class here Bologna to 476; prefer --372611)

*See also discussion at T2—4–9: Cities, towns, villages.*

## T2—713 and T2—714

### Ontario and Quebec

In Ontario and Quebec, jurisdictions have the names of District, City, County, Municipality, Regional Municipality, Regional County Municipality, or Urban agglomeration. The term “City” does not necessarily refer to an urban locality. A District, City, County, Municipality, Regional Municipality, Regional County Municipality, or Urban agglomeration can be named after an urban locality within the jurisdiction. If the urban locality is approximately the same as the jurisdiction, the locality is given in a class-here note. For example, City of Toronto, the jurisdiction, and Toronto, the urban locality, are approximately the same; thus, the table entry:

T2—713541	City of Toronto
	Former name: Metropolitan Toronto
	Including East York, Etobicoke, North York, Scarborough, York
	Class here Toronto

If the urban locality is not approximately the same as the jurisdiction, only the jurisdiction is given. The classifier can assume that were the locality to be given, the locality would be in an including note. For example, City of Gatineau, the jurisdiction, and Gatineau, the urban locality, are not approximately the same; thus, the table entry:

T2—714221	City of Gatineau
-----------	------------------

*See also discussion at T2—4–9: Cities, towns, villages.*

## T2—73 vs. T2—71

### United States vs. Canada

Use T2—73 if works about the United States and Canada are predominantly about the United States. Use T2—71 when Canada receives fuller treatment or the United States and Canada are given equal treatment. Use T2—7 only when the work also discusses areas in T2—72, even though Canada and the United States are assigned most of the numbers in the span. If in doubt, prefer T2—73.

## T2—93

### New Zealand

In New Zealand, the jurisdiction directly below the Region is referred to as either District or City. The term “City” does not necessarily refer to an urban locality. Districts and

Cities are often named after an urban locality either within or approximately the same as the jurisdiction. If the urban locality is approximately the same as the jurisdiction, the locality is given in a class-here note. For example, Auckland City, the jurisdiction, and Auckland, the urban locality, are approximately the same; thus, the table entry:

T2—9324                      Auckland City

Class here Auckland

If the urban locality is not approximately the same as the jurisdiction, only the jurisdiction is given. The classifier can assume that were the locality to be given, it would be in an including note. For example, Dunedin City, the jurisdiction, and Dunedin, the urban locality, are not approximately the same; thus, the table entry:

T2—9392                      Dunedin City

See also discussion at T2—4—9: *Cities, towns, villages.*

## T2—99 vs. T2—19

### Extraterrestrial worlds vs. Space

Use T2—99 for the various bodies of the universe moving through space, e.g., moon rocks 552.09991. Use T2—19 only for space itself. If in doubt, prefer T2—99.

## Table 3. Subdivisions for the Arts, for Individual Literatures, for Specific Literary Forms

### Number building

Examples of basic number building for works in an individual language by or about individual authors (with use of Table 3A) and by or about more than one author (with use of Table 3B) are given in this entry. Use the following elements to build the numbers: base number; form; period; kind, scope, or medium; notation 08 Collections or notation 09 Criticism (plus additional 0s in some cases); subform; additional notation from Table 3C and other tables. Detailed instructions for number building appear in Tables 3A and 3B.

Note: in the following discussion, “T3” refers to both Table 3A (individual authors) and Table 3B (more than one author).

### More than one form

1. Works by or about more than one author: not restricted by period or form (Table 3B)

Base no. + notation 08 or 09

81 + 08 = 810.8 (an anthology of American literature)

2. Works by or about more than one author: restricted to a specific period but not to a specific form (Table 3B)

Base no. + notation 08 or 09 + period

83 + 08 + 006 = 830.8006 (a collection of 18th-century German literature)

3. Works by or about more than one author: not restricted by form or period, place of authorship emphasized (Table 3B)

Base no. + notation 080 or 09 + 9 from Table 3C + area notation from Table 2

869 + 080 + 9 + 81 = 869.080981 (an anthology of literature in Portuguese by Brazilian authors)

### Forms T3—1–7

1. Works by or about an individual author: restricted to a specific form and period (Table 3A)

Base no. + form + period

82 + 1 + 3 = 821.3 (Spenser's *Faerie Queene*)

2. Works by or about more than one author: restricted to a specific form but not to a specific period (Table 3B)

Base no. + form + notation 008 or 009

82 + 2 + 009 = 822.009 (criticism of English drama)

3. Works by or about more than one author: restricted to a specific form, to a specific kind, scope, or medium, and to a specific period (Table 3B)

Base no. + form + kind, scope, or medium + notation 08 or 09 + period

84 + 3 + 01 + 08 + 07 = 843.010807 (a collection of 19th-century French short stories)

4. Works by or about more than one author: restricted to a specific form but not to a specific kind, scope, or medium; restricted to a specific period (Table 3B)

Base no. + form + period + notation 08 or 09

83 + 2 + 914 + 09 = 832.91409 (criticism of German drama of the second half of the 20th century)

### Form T3—8 Miscellaneous writings

1. Works by or about an individual author: restricted to a specific form, period, and subform (T3A—8)

Base no. + form + period + subform

81 + 8 + 4 + 02 = 818.402 (a collection of quotations of an individual American author of the later 19th century)

2. Works by or about more than one author: restricted to a specific form, period, and subform (T3B—8)

Base no. + form + period + subform + notation 08 or 09

84 + 8 + 914 + 02 + 08 = 848.9140208 (a collection of quotations of several French authors of the later 20th century)

## Table 3A. Subdivisions for Works by or about Individual Authors

See also discussion at Table 3B vs. Table 3A.

### Comprehensive numbers for authors, and numbers for individual works

Follow the criteria given below on language, national affiliation, literary form, and literary period in order to determine the comprehensive number for collected works, crit-

ical evaluation, or biography of an author. Use the same national affiliation and literary period for comprehensive works and for all individual works of an author; however, use the language and form appropriate for each individual work, even if different from the language and form selected for the author's comprehensive number.

### **Language**

Class an author with the language in which the author writes.

If an author changes place of residence or national affiliation to a country with a different language but continues to write in the same language, use the language in which the author writes, e.g., use 891.7344 for a novel in Russian by Solzhenitsyn, even if the novel was written while he was living in the United States.

Class comprehensive works for an author who writes in more than one language with the language that the author used last, e.g., Samuel Beckett 848.91409. However, if another language is predominant, class with that language. Class individual works of such an author with the language in which they were originally written.

### **National affiliation**

National affiliation affects the choice of number only for literature written in English (810 vs. 820) or if an option for identifying national literatures is used.

If an author changes national affiliation to a country with the same language as that in which the author has been writing, use the literature number appropriate for the author's adopted citizenship, e.g., class T. S. Eliot as a British author. Class all works of such an author, including individual works written before the change of citizenship, with the same national literature.

If an author changes place of residence, but not national affiliation, to another country with the same language as that in which the author has been writing, continue to use the literature number of the author's original country, e.g., class a Jamaican author living in London, but still retaining Jamaican citizenship, as a Jamaican author.

If information about an author's national affiliation is not readily available in the work being classed or in standard reference books, use the literature number of the author's country of origin, if known; or the literature number of the country in which the author's earlier works were published.

### **Literary form**

For comprehensive works, use the form with which an author is chiefly identified, e.g., Jane Austen 823.7. If the author is not chiefly identified with one form, use T3A—8 Miscellaneous writings plus literary period plus notation 09 from the table at T3A—81–89, e.g., use 828.91409 for a late-20th-century English author who is equally famous as a novelist, dramatist, and poet. For an individual work, use the form in which the work is written.

### **Literary periods**

Use only one literary period for an author and all of the author's works, including works that may have been published earlier or later than the dates covered by that period. Determine the literary period in accordance with scholarly consensus about when an author flourished. For example, class an author commonly regarded as an early-19th-century writer as such, even if the author published literary works at the end of the 18th centu-

ry. In the absence of scholarly comment, use the weight of bibliographic evidence to determine when an author flourished. For example, class an author who published one novel in 1999, one novel in 2000, one in 2001, and one in 2002 in the literary period beginning with 2000. If the period when an author flourished cannot be determined, use the date of the author's earliest known separate literary publication, disregarding magazine contributions, isolated student works, and juvenilia.

If a new name is known to be a pseudonym for an author whose literary period has already been established, use the established period for works attributed to the pseudonym. For example, if an English author began publishing at the end of the twentieth century and was assigned the period notation 914 for 1945–1999, then began publishing under a new pseudonym in 2001, use the same period notation 914 for works attributed to the new pseudonym (*not* 92 for 2000- ).

Make an exception to the rule of only one literary period for an author if the author wrote in more than one language and flourished during different time periods in different languages: use the appropriate literary period notation for each language. For example, if an author began to flourish as a literary author in Russian during 1917–1945, use the period notation 42 for 1917–1945 for works by that author originally written in Russian. If that same author began to flourish as a literary author in American English after 1945, use the period notation 54 for 1945–1999 for works by that author originally written in English.

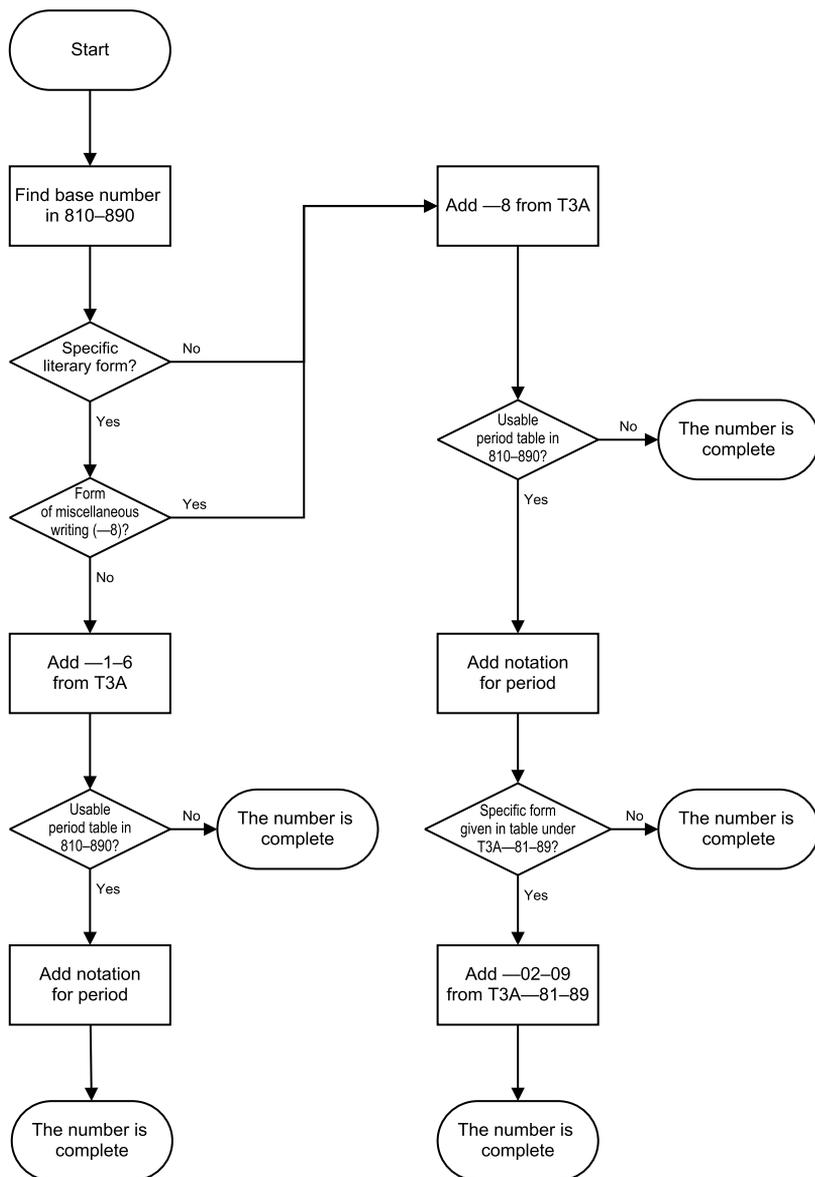
### **Biography**

Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for biography. Class literary diaries and reminiscences in T3A—8 plus period subdivision plus subdivision 03, e.g., Hemingway's *A Moveable Feast* 818.5203.

### **Number building**

Examples of number building are given in the *Manual* at the beginning of Table 3. Use the following flow chart as an aid to building numbers and as a supplement to the detailed instructions at Table 3A.

Flow chart A: Works by or about an individual author



**T3A—2, T3B—2 vs. T3A—1, T3B—102****Drama vs. Dramatic poetry**

Use T3—2 for poetic plays intended for theatrical presentation, such as the plays of Shakespeare and Marlowe, and poetic plays designed to be read rather than acted, such as Milton's *Samson Agonistes*. Use T3A—1 and T3B—102 for poetry that employs dramatic form or some element of dramatic technique as a means of achieving poetic ends.

Use T3A—2 and T3B—2045 for monologues typically intended for use in theatrical presentations featuring only one actor. Use T3A—1 and T3B—102 for dramatic monologues that are poems in which the speaker is a fictional or historical character speaking to an identifiable but silent listener at a dramatic moment in the speaker's life, such as Robert Browning's "My Last Duchess."

If in doubt, prefer T3A—2 or T3B—2.

**T3A—8 + 02, T3B—802, T3B—8 + 02 vs. 398.6, 793.735****Anecdotes, epigrams, graffiti, jokes, jests, quotations, riddles, tongue twisters vs. Anonymous riddles from the oral tradition vs. Riddles as puzzles**

Use T3A—8 + 02, T3B—802, T3B—8 + 02 for interdisciplinary works on riddles and for riddles by known authors, even though they may not seem at home amid belles lettres, especially juvenile riddle jokes. Use 398.6 for anonymous riddles from the oral tradition. Use 793.735 for riddles as a type of puzzle similar to logic puzzles.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: riddles as jokes (T3A—8 + 02, T3B—802, T3B—8 + 02), 398.6, 793.735.

**T3A—8 + 03 and T3B—803, T3B—8 + 03****Diaries, journals, notebooks, reminiscences**

Use T3A—8 + 03, T3B—803, and T3B—8 + 03 for diaries and reminiscences of literary authors in which the life of the author or authors as such is of key interest. However, class the diaries and reminiscences of literary authors that emphasize some other subject besides the general life of the author with the subject emphasized, e.g., use 940.5472 for a diary compiled while the author was in a prisoner-of-war camp during World War II.

### Table 3B. Subdivisions for Works by or about More than One Author

See also discussion at Table 3B vs. Table 3A.

#### Preference order

The preference order in case of conflict between literary forms is spelled out at the beginning of the 800 schedule and in Table 3B under T3B—1–8. There are also preference orders in case of conflict among other aspects. The preference order for the four aspects expressed by means of Table 3C is as follows:

Themes and subjects	T3C—3
Elements	T3C—2
Qualities	T3C—1
Works for and by groups of people	T3C—8–9

For example, use 811.00803581 (*not* 811.00809287) for a general anthology of poetry about war written by American women poets.

The preference given to literary period in relation to the four aspects expressed by means of Table 3C varies: for works treating more than two literatures or more than one form in one literature, literary periods have a lower priority than the aspects from Table 3C; for works treating a specific form in an individual literature, literary periods have a higher priority than the aspects from Table 3C.

Specific media, scope, kinds consistently have preference over both period and the aspects from Table 3C. However, the preference given to scope in relation to kind varies: for drama, scope has a higher preference; but for fiction, kind has higher preference.

Preference orders are always the same for both collections of literary texts and criticism of the texts.

Five lists appear in the Manual as summaries of preference order information that is given also in the schedules and tables, but scattered in class-elsewhere notes and rule-of-zero choices. These lists are referred to below as “literary preference order lists.” The locations of these lists are shown in the see-also references at the end of this section.

Sometimes elements low in the literary preference order lists can be added to a number after the higher priority elements. For example, consider the preference order list for fiction. Use 813.540932162 for a critical appraisal of later-20th-century American fiction about ocean travel: 813 (American fiction) + 54 (period: later 20th century) + 09 (critical appraisal) + 32162 (theme: ocean travel). The period comes first because it has higher priority than the theme; but the theme can also be expressed. Use the same preference order for the additional elements, e.g., for critical appraisal of later-20th-century American fiction about ocean travel by women, the theme of ocean travel would be expressed by means of Table 3C, but the authorship by a member of a specific group of people would not be expressed by means of Table 3C, because themes appear higher in the preference order list.

Sometimes aspects low in the literary preference order lists can be expressed only by means of standard subdivision notation from Table 1. In the example above of a critical appraisal of later-20th-century American fiction about ocean travel by women, use notation 082 from Table 1 to express the aspect of women: 813.540932162082. Here is another example, also from the preference order list for fiction, but this time for fiction from more than two literatures. Use 808.83935820973209034 for a collection of

---

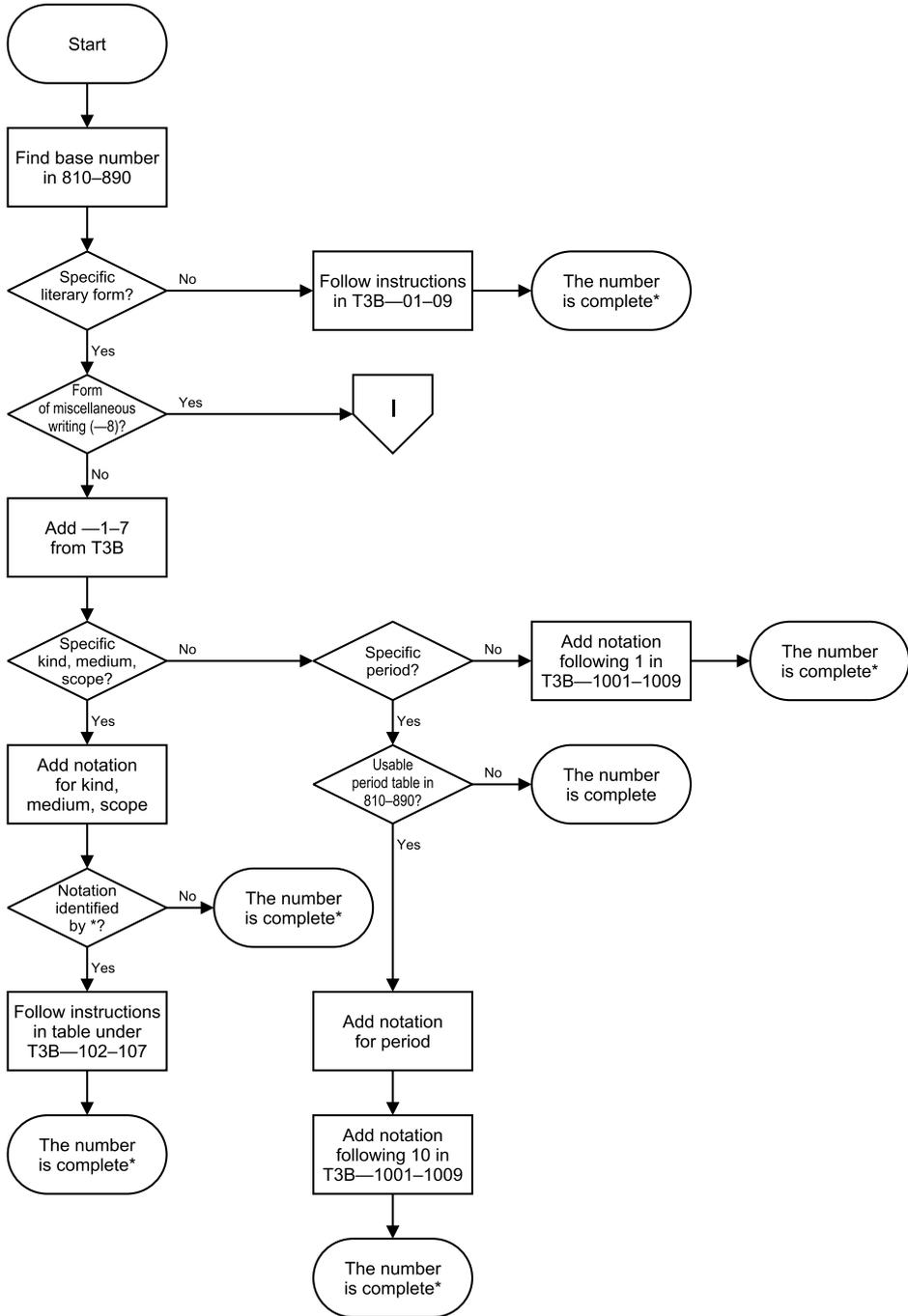
19th-century fiction of several literatures about urban life: 808.839 (collection of fiction from more than two literatures displaying specific features) + 358209732 (theme: urban life) + 09034 (standard subdivision for the historical period of the 19th century). In the literary preference order list, theme comes before period; and once the theme has been expressed, there is no way to express the period except by use of the standard subdivision.

*See also discussion at T3B—08 and T3B—09; also at T3B—1; also at T3B—2; also at T3B—3; also at 808.8.*

### **Number building**

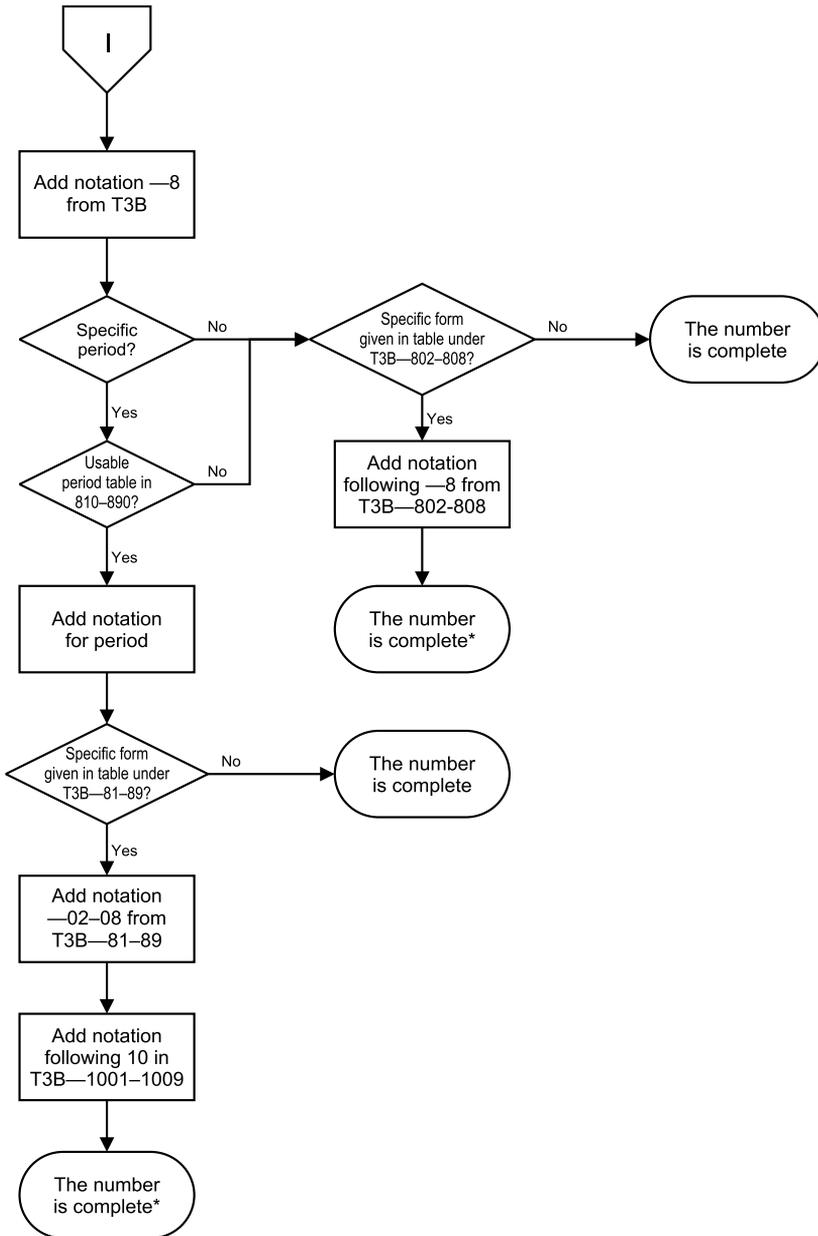
Examples of number building are given in the *Manual* at the beginning of Table 3. Use the following flow chart as an aid to building numbers and as a supplement to the detailed instructions at Table 3B.

Flow chart B: Works by or about more than one author



\*If appropriate, standard subdivisions may be added

Flow chart B for notation 8 Miscellaneous writings



\*If appropriate, standard subdivisions may be added

**T3B—0 vs. T3A—0****Table 3B. Subdivisions for Works by or about More than One Author vs. Table 3A. Subdivisions for Works by or about Individual Authors**

Use Table 3B for an individual work by more than one author if the work is a collection where clearly defined parts are contributed by different authors.

Use Table 3A for an individual work by more than one author where the authors have collaborated so as to create a single whole and it is not easy (or at least not intended to be easy) to tell where the contribution of one author begins and the other ends. For example, use Table 3A for a play written in collaboration between Sir Francis Beaumont and John Fletcher.

If in doubt, prefer Table 3B.

**T3B—08 and T3B—09****Preference order for collections and criticism of literature in more than one form**

Here are examples illustrating the preference order for collections of texts (T3B—08) in more than one form from an individual literature (American literature used for the examples). The preference order is the same for criticism (T3B—09).

1. Specific themes and subjects, e.g., 810.80382 (religion)
2. Specific elements, e.g., 810.8024 (plot)
3. Specific qualities, e.g., 810.8013 (idealism)
4. Works for and by groups of people, e.g., 810.809282 (for children)
5. Period, e.g., 810.8003 (19th century)

*See also discussion at Table 3B: Preference order.*

**T3B—091—099 vs. T3B—09001—09009****Literature displaying specific features or emphasizing subjects, or for and by specific groups of people vs. Literature from specific periods**

If there is no applicable literary period table, T3B—09001—09009 cannot be used; moreover, do not add notation 0901—0905 from Table 1 to T3B—09 to show period, e.g., 20th-century Macedonian literature 891.81909 (*not* 891.81909000904).

However, the rule of zero gives T3B—091—099 priority over T3B—09001—09009. If the provisions of T3B—091—099 are used, then do not add any otherwise applicable literary period table. Instead, add notation 0901—0905 from Table 1 to indicate period, regardless of whether there is a literary period table for that literature, e.g., use 810.93580904 for 20th-century American literature in English on historical and political themes, use 891.819093580904 for 20th-century Macedonian literature on historical and political themes.

## T3B—1

**Preference order for poetry**

Here are examples illustrating the preference order for poetry (A) from more than two literatures and (B) from one or two literatures. The preference order is the same for collections and criticism.

## A. Poetry from more than two literatures

(Collections used as example)

1. Specific kinds, e.g., 808.8142 (sonnets)
2. Specific themes and subjects, e.g., 808.819353 (friendship)
3. Specific elements, e.g., 808.81922 (description)
4. Specific qualities, e.g., 808.819145 (romanticism)
5. Period, e.g., 808.81033 (18th century)

## B. Poetry from one or two literatures

(Criticism of American poetry used as example)

1. Specific kinds, e.g., 811.03209 (epic)
2. Period, e.g., 811.5409 (later 20th century)
3. Specific themes and subjects, e.g., 811.009353 (friendship)
4. Specific elements, e.g., 811.00922 (description)
5. Specific qualities, e.g., 811.009145 (romanticism)
6. Works for and by groups of people, e.g., 811.0098924 (by Jews)

*See also discussion at Table 3B: Preference order.*

## T3B—102–107, T3B—205, T3B—308 vs. T3C—1, T3C—3

**Genres of poetry, drama, fiction vs. Arts and literature displaying specific qualities of style, mood, viewpoint or dealing with specific themes and subjects**

Use the numbers for specific kinds of poetry, drama, and fiction for works belonging to specific literary genres, e.g., the genres of historical drama T3B—20514 and realistic fiction T3B—3083. Often the themes and other characteristics that mark specific genres can also be expressed by means of T3C—1 or T3C—3, e.g., works about historical themes T3C—358, works displaying realism T3C—12. Always prefer the genre number over the number derived from Table 3C for literary works belonging to a specific genre, e.g., a collection of historical drama T3B—2051408 (*not* T3B—20080358); criticism of realistic novels T3B—308309 (*not* T3B—300912). Add T3C—1 or T3C—3 to the genre number if it is not redundant, e.g., add T3C—358 for a discussion of historical themes in tragedy (T3B—2051209358), but not for a discussion of historical themes in historical drama.

Use T3C—1 or T3C—3 for literary works that display specific features and are not limited to a specific genre, e.g., a discussion of historical themes in serious and comic drama not limited by period T3B—2009358, a discussion of realistic elements in

fiction of various kinds not limited by period T3B—300912. Use T3C—1 or T3C—3 also for literary works displaying specific features that might be regarded as marking a genre if no such genre is named for the relevant literary form in Table 3B, e.g., use T3B—200935878 for a discussion of western drama not limited by period as there is no mention of western drama under T3B—205 Specific kinds of drama. However, use genre notation 30874 from Table 3B for western fiction (*not* T3B—30095878).

If in doubt between Table 3B notation for genres and Table 3C notation, prefer the Table 3B notation.

Use notation from Table 3B only for literature (*belles lettres*); not for the arts, for films, or for radio or television programs. Use T3C—1 and T3C—3 to express genre for the arts, films, radio and television programs, e.g., use T3C—15 for science fiction in the arts, in films, in radio and television programs; but use T3B—308762 for science fiction as a genre of fiction. Use T3C—11 for experimental works in the arts, for experimental films, for experimental radio and television programs; but use T3B—807 for experimental literary works without identifiable literary form.

## T3B—2

### Preference order for drama

Here are examples illustrating the preference order for drama (A) from more than two literatures and (B) from one or two literatures. The preference order is the same for collections and criticism.

#### A. Drama from more than two literatures

(Criticism used as example)

1. Specific media, e.g., 809.225 (television)
2. Specific scope, e.g., 809.241 (one-act plays)
3. Specific kinds, e.g., 809.2512 (tragedy)
4. Specific themes or subjects, e.g., 809.29351 (Faust)
5. Specific elements, e.g., 809.2925 (stream of consciousness)
6. Specific qualities, e.g., 809.29145 (romanticism)
7. Period, e.g., 809.204 (20th century)

#### B. Drama from one or two literatures

(Collections of American drama used as example)

1. Specific media, e.g., 812.025083548 (television plays on death)
2. Specific scope, e.g., 812.04108 (one-act plays)
3. Specific kinds, e.g., 812.051208 (tragedy)
4. Period, e.g., 812.5408 (collection of later 20th century, no focus), 812.540809287 (20th century, by women)
5. Specific themes and subjects, e.g., 812.008036 (weather)
6. Specific elements, e.g., 812.008027 (characters)

7. Specific qualities, e.g., 812.008015 (symbolism)
8. Works for and by groups of people, e.g., 812.008092827 (for girls)

*See also discussion at Table 3B: Preference order.*

### T3B—3

#### **Preference order for fiction**

Here are examples illustrating the preference order for fiction (A) from more than two literatures and (B) from one or two literatures. The preference order is the same for collections and criticism.

#### A. Fiction from more than two literatures

(Collections used as example)

1. Specific kinds, e.g., 808.8383 (sociological)
2. Specific scope, e.g., 808.831 (short stories)
3. Specific themes and subjects, e.g., 808.839362 (animals)
4. Specific elements, e.g., 808.83922 (description)
5. Specific qualities, e.g., 808.83913 (idealism)
6. Period, e.g., 808.83034 (19th century)

#### B. Fiction from one or two literatures

(Criticism of American fiction used as example)

1. Specific kinds, e.g., 813.0876209 (science fiction)
2. Specific scope, e.g., 813.01093581 (short stories about war)
3. Period, e.g., 813.5409 (later 20th century), 813.540932162 (later 20th century, about ocean travel)
4. Specific themes and subjects, e.g., 813.009351 (about King Arthur)
5. Specific elements, e.g., 813.00927 (characters)
6. Specific qualities, e.g., 813.00912 (naturalism)
7. Works for and by groups of people, e.g., 813.009896073 (fiction by African Americans)

*See also discussion at Table 3B: Preference order.*

### **Table 3C. Additional Notation for Arts and Literature**

#### **T3C—37 vs. T3C—15**

#### **The supernatural, mythological, legendary vs. Symbolism, allegory, fantasy, myth**

Use T3C—37 for mythological themes closely tied to specific mythologies of the past, e.g., Roman mythology in Renaissance poetry. Use T3C—15 for abstract myths not tied

to specific mythologies of the past, e.g., the myth of a search for lost innocence. If in doubt, prefer T3C—37.

Class specific mythological persons in T3C—351, specific groups of mythological people in T3C—352, mythology as a religious theme in T3C—382013.

### T3C—93–99

#### **Residents of specific continents, countries, localities**

Use notation 93–99 from Table 3C primarily for the following:

1. Literature in a language by residents of a certain area within a country, e.g., a collection of American literature by residents of Illinois 810.809773.
2. Literature in a language by residents of a country other than the traditional homeland of the dominant literature of the language, e.g., a collection of Spanish literature by Chilean authors 860.80983. The residents of a country other than the traditional homeland may be either native or nonnative residents of the country, e.g., a collection of English literature by non-Japanese residents of Japan 820.80952.
3. Literature in a language by residents of several countries on the same continent from more than one period (only for works in which the literature of one country does not predominate), e.g., French literature by residents of France, Switzerland, Belgium 840.8094; French literature by residents of Africa 840.8096.

Do not use T3C—93–99 for literature in a language by residents of the traditional homeland of the dominant literature of the language except for residents of only part of the country, e.g., a collection of Spanish literature by residents of Spain 860.8, but a collection of Spanish literature by residents of Madrid 860.8094641.

Do not use T3C—943 for German literature by residents of the Federal Republic of Germany, but use T3C—9436 for German literature by residents of Austria.

Do not use T3C—973 for literature in English by residents of the United States, but use T3C—971 for literature in English by residents of Canada.

### T3C—93–99, T3C—9174 vs. T3C—8

#### **Literature for and by residents of specific continents, countries, localities and Literature for and by residents of regions where specific ethnic and national groups predominate vs. Literature for and by ethnic and national groups**

Use T3C—93–99 rather than T3C—8 for groups that predominate in an area, e.g., a collection of English literature by people of Irish ancestry in Australia 820.8089162094, but a collection of English literature by people of Irish ancestry in Ireland 820.809415; a collection of Spanish literature by Mexican-Americans 860.8086872073, but a collection of Spanish literature by Mexicans 860.80972; a collection of French literature by Arabs in France 840.808927044, but a collection of French literature by Arabs in North Africa 840.80961.

Do not use T3C—8 for the ethnic or national group so closely associated with the language that specifying the group would be redundant, e.g., a collection of Arabic literature by Arabs 892.708 (*not* 892.70808927); thus use 892.7080944 (*not* 892.70808927044) for a collection of Arabic literature by Arabs residing in France.

Do not use T3C—9174 (regions where specific ethnic and national groups predominate) for literature for and by ethnic and national groups since such use would practically

duplicate the ethnic and national group numbers. For example, Arabs who are residents of all areas where they predominate taken together constitute the overwhelming majority of all Arabs, so T3C—8927 would be used for them rather than T3C—9174927. However, in most cases use of T3C—8 would be redundant. For example, most books about literature by Arabs from all areas where they predominate are about literature in Arabic, so that expressing the ethnic group Arabs with either T3C—9174 or T3C—8 would be redundant.

If in doubt, prefer T3C—93–99.

## Table 4. Subdivisions of Individual Languages and Language Families

### T4—1–5, T4—8 vs. T4—7

**Description and analysis of the standard form of the language and Standard usage of the language (Prescriptive linguistics) vs. Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations**

A language may have multiple standard forms. Use T4—1–5 and T4—8 for any of the standard forms, e.g., use 421.52 (*not* 427.994) for a work on standard Australian English pronunciation. Use 427.994 for a work on Australian English pronunciation only if it stresses the distinctive characteristics that make Australian pronunciation different from British or American pronunciation. If in doubt, prefer T4—1–5 and T4—8.

### T4—3 vs. T4—81

**Dictionaries of the standard form of the language vs. Standard usage of words**

Use T4—3 for works intended for ready reference. Specialized dictionaries may be arranged in other ways besides alphabetically (e.g., picture dictionaries in subject order, thesauri in classified order), but the order must be appropriate for ready reference.

Use T4—81 for works intended to be read or studied in full in order to learn vocabulary. The works may be informal and entertaining, e.g., narratives for small children, or formally organized into lessons with quizzes.

If in doubt, prefer T4—3.

### T4—7

**Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations**

#### Use of standard subdivisions

Add notation from Table 1 to T4—7 and its subdivisions according to the usual limitations on use of standard subdivisions. For example, use notation 03 from Table 1 and notation 03 from the table under T1—093–099 in Table 1 for dictionaries, e.g., a dictionary of Old High German 437.0103, a dictionary of Northern Yemeni Arabic 492.7709533203.

Where subdivisions are provided for early versions of a language, notes are used to override the rule of zero so that geographic variants of an early version of a language class with the early version, e.g., use 427.0209428 for Middle English dialects of north-east England. Use 427.9428 for modern dialects of northeast England and comprehensive works on Middle English and modern English dialects of northeast England.

### Pidgins and creoles

Class a specific pidgin or creole as a variation of the source language from which more of its vocabulary comes than from its other source language(s). Class a pidgin or creole, which is customarily associated with a specific geographic area, in T4—709 plus the area number from Table 2 or in one of the subdivisions of T4—7 for geographic variations where they are provided in 420–490, e.g., the Krio language of Sierra Leone 427.9664.

## Table 5. Ethnic and National Groups

### Nationality and language

Table 5 Ethnic and National Groups and Table 6 Languages are both based on the traditional sequence of languages in 420–490, and therefore most numbers are developed in parallel. But separate tables are needed because language and nationality do not always match, e.g., there are Canadian people (T5—11 in Table 5), but no Canadian language; there is a Yiddish language (T6—391 in Table 6) but no Yiddish people.

### Ethnic group and nationality

The generally preferred citation order is ethnic group over nationality, as nationality is normally given a low priority, and citizens and noncitizens of a country class in the same number. However, a different and atypical citation order is given at some specific numbers in Table 5, e.g., for Canadians of French and British origin, the prescribed citation order is nationality first (T5—11 Canadians), then ethnic group: T5—112 for Canadians of British origin, T5—114 for Canadians of French origin. Use the numbers T5—21071 (T5—21 people of British Isles + 71 Canada) and T5—41071 (T5—41 French + 71 Canada) only for persons of British and French origin in Canada who are not Canadian citizens. But in the absence of specific instructions to the contrary use the citation order given at the beginning of the table, e.g., Canadians of Ukrainian descent T5—91791071 (*not* T5—11). Use this same number for both Canadians of Ukrainian descent and persons of Ukrainian descent who are in Canada but not Canadian citizens.

In general, use the same number for both the majority ethnic group of a nation and the total population viewed as a national group, e.g., T5—94541 for both ethnic Finns and all citizens of Finland viewed as a national group. Usually, priority between ethnic and national affiliation is an issue only for minority ethnic groups, e.g., use T5—39704897 (T5—397 Swedes + 4897 Finland) for Finnish citizens who are ethnic Swedes, a minority ethnic group, because their ethnic group takes priority over their nationality. Use T5—94541073 (T5—94541 Finns + 73 United States) for Finnish citizens who are ethnic Finns in the United States, but use T5—397073 (T5—397 Swedes + 73 United States) for Finnish citizens who are ethnic Swedes in the United States, which is the number for all persons of Swedish descent in the United States. Their Finnish national origin is not expressed because of the low priority given to nationality. The exception to this rule occurs when the class number to which Table 5 notation is added defines the present location of the group, as in 940–999, so that it is possible to express both the present and the past location of the group, e.g., use 973.0439704897 for ethnic Swedes from Finland in United States history.

Special developments that allow expression of both ethnic and national affiliation are typically made only for the majority ethnic group in a nation, under the heading “national group,” e.g., T5—6887 expresses both Spanish American ethnicity and Venezuelan nationality, while T5—9697292 expresses both African ancestry and Jamaican nationality. However, there is no special development to express both African ancestry and

Venezuelan nationality because African Venezuelans are a minority in Venezuela and cannot be called a “national group.” Therefore the number for African Venezuelans in England (T5—96042) is the same as the number for persons of African ancestry in general in England; and Venezuelan nationality is not expressed (*except* when it is possible to express both present and past location, e.g., African Venezuelans in English history 942.00496087). Conversely, Table 5 numbers for Venezuelans of Spanish origin in England (T5—6887042) and Jamaicans of African origin in England (T5—9697292042) always express the national origins.

In some cases, special developments for national groups lead to the number for a national group being clearly different from the number for the largest ethnic group of the country. For example, the number for the Bhutanese as a national group is T5—91418; but the Bhotia, the largest ethnic group, speak Tibetan dialects and class as an ethnic group with the Tibetans in T5—9541. In some cases, the national group number for a country may not express the ethnicity of the majority of the population. For example, the national group numbers for all the modern nations of Latin America where Spanish is at least one of the official languages express Spanish-American ethnicity, though the majority of the population in some countries is of native American origin, e.g., Bolivia. Class works that discuss all the people of a nation in the national group number specified in the table. Class works that focus on a specific ethnic group with the ethnic group. Use the national group number for a work that focuses on a specific ethnic group if it expresses the appropriate ethnicity, e.g., use T5—6884 for works that discuss all the people of Bolivia and also for works that focus on the Bolivians who speak Spanish and follow Spanish-American customs; but use T5—98323084 for works that focus on the Quechua of Bolivia, T5—98324084 for works that focus on the Aymara of Bolivia.

### **Regional groups**

The special developments discussed in the preceding two paragraphs with respect to national groups also include multi-country regional groups; the records for T5—687–688, T5—9275–9276, T5—966–968, and T5—969 all have captions that specify “regional and national groups.” Use notation from these special developments for comprehensive works on regional groups viewed as a whole population with similar characteristics, much as if they were national groups, e.g., comprehensive works on Central Americans T5—68728, comprehensive works on North Africans T5—92761.

Do not use notation from the special developments for minority groups; instead, use notation for the ethnic group plus zero plus area notation from Table 2 for minority groups in a region, e.g., scattered groups of hunter-gatherers in Central Africa T5—96067 (*not* T5—967).

### **Adding area notation**

Area notation is normally added to a Table 5 number to signify location, e.g., sociology of Italians in England 305.851042. However, area notation is omitted whenever it is redundant, e.g., 973.046872 Mexican Americans in U.S. history (*not* 973.046872073).

### **African Americans**

An atypical development for African Americans (T5—96073) gives extra emphasis to nationality for a minority group, while still preserving the usual citation order of ethnic group before nationality. The 073 signifies U.S. nationality rather than location; so area numbers can be added to it in the usual way, e.g., use T5—960730747 for U.S. citizens with African ancestry in New York State. However, this applies only to U.S. citizens; so use T5—960747 for noncitizens of African ancestry in New York State. There are no

special developments for most ethnic groups in the United States, e.g., use T5—510747 for persons of Italian descent in New York State regardless of whether they are U.S. citizens. The Table 5 number for African Americans always expresses the U.S. national origin when used for areas outside the U.S., e.g., use T5—96073042 for African Americans in England. Conversely, the number for Italian Americans in England (T5—51042) is the same as for Italians in England (with the usual exception for history, e.g., Italian Americans in English history 942.00451073).

### T5—112, T5—114 vs. T5—2, T5—41

#### **Canadians of British origin and Canadians of French origin vs. British, English, Anglo-Saxons and French**

Use T5—112 for Canadian citizens of British origin and T5—114 for Canadian citizens of French origin, even with numbers that already specify Canada, e.g., use 971.004112 for Canadian citizens of British ancestry in Canadian history. Use T5—112 or T5—114 for accounts of persons of British or French ancestry becoming Canadian citizens. Also use T5—112 and T5—114 for persons of British or French origin living in the territory that later became the nation of Canada if they are regarded as among the precursors of British or French Canadians or founders of the nation, e.g., the French in Canada 1600–1867 971.004114.

Use T5—2 and T5—41 for persons of British or French ancestry who were not and never became Canadian citizens, even though they may have resided in Canada or in the territory that later became Canada. For example, the inhabitants of the French colony Acadia in what is now Nova Scotia who were expelled in 1755 and became the Cajuns of today's Louisiana were never Canadian citizens; so use T5—410763 (*not* T5—1140763) for Louisiana Cajuns.

If in doubt, prefer T5—112 and T5—114.

### T5—13 vs. T5—2073, T5—21073

#### **People of United States (“Americans”) vs. British, English, Anglo-Saxons in United States and People of British Isles in United States**

Use T5—13 (*not* T5—2073 or T5—21073) for U.S. citizens of British ancestry, even with a number that already means United States, e.g., British Americans in U.S. history 973.0413. Use T5—13 for comprehensive works on both U.S. citizens and non-U.S. citizens of British ancestry in the United States. Use T5—13 for accounts of persons of British ancestry becoming U.S. citizens. Use T5—2073 or T5—21073 for non-U.S. citizens of British ancestry in the United States. (Do not add 0 plus notation 73 if T5—2 or T5—21 is used with a number that already means United States, as it would be redundant, e.g., all noncitizens of British ancestry in U.S. history 973.042.) If in doubt, prefer T5—13.

### T5—201–209 vs. T5—2101–2109

#### **British, English, Anglo-Saxons by area vs. People of British Isles by area**

Use T5—201–209 for people of British ancestry in an area when many of them are or have most recently been citizens of the United States, Canada, Australia, or New Zealand, e.g., people from the United Kingdom, the United States, Canada, and Australia in the Third World T5—201724. Use T5—2101–2109 for people of British ancestry in an area when they are or have most recently been citizens of the United Kingdom,

e.g., people from the United Kingdom in the Third World T5—2101724. If in doubt, prefer T5—201—209.

**T5—9435****Turks**

Use T5—9435 for (a) the people of Turkey as a national group; and (b) people who speak, or whose ancestors spoke, Turkish (Osmanli Turks and their descendants), including those who are not Turkish nationals, e.g., Turkish Cypriots T5—943505693.

**T5—96073****African Americans (United States Blacks)**

The 073 in T5—96073 signifies U.S. nationality rather than location. It is never omitted even where it would be redundant if it simply signified location, e.g., 973.0496073 African Americans in U.S. history (as distinct from 973.0496 for noncitizens of African ancestry in U.S. history). Area subdivisions are added to it in the usual way, e.g., 305.8960730747 sociology of African Americans in New York (as distinct from 305.8960747 sociology of non-U.S. citizens of African ancestry in New York).

## Table 6. Languages

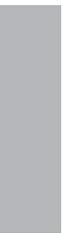
The source of information about language families most used in recent revisions of Table 6 is *Ethnologue*, 15th edition (Dallas, Texas: SIL International, 2005; also on the Internet <http://www.ethnologue.com/>). However, Table 6 diverges from *Ethnologue* in many specific instances. Check Table 6 and the Relative Index first to find a specific language or group of languages. If nothing is found, consult *Ethnologue* to find the appropriate language family or group of languages.

**T6—926****Linear A**

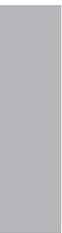
It is not known what language is represented by the Linear A script used in ancient Crete (also known as Minoan Linear A). At one time the language was thought to be a West Semitic language, and works on the script have been classed in T6—926 Canaanite languages for many years. If the script is deciphered and the language identified as a non-Canaanite language, then Linear A will be moved to the appropriate place.

**T6—9639****Bantu languages**

Groups and zones of Bantu languages were originally based on Malcolm Guthrie's *Comparative Bantu; an Introduction to the Comparative Linguistics and Prehistory of the Bantu Languages*, 1967–1971. These groups and zones appear in a modified and updated form in *Ethnologue*, 15th edition (Dallas, Texas: SIL International, 2005; also on the Internet <http://www.ethnologue.com/>). Most of the time, but not always, Table 6 follows *Ethnologue*. Check Table 6 and the Relative Index first to find a specific language or group of languages. If nothing is found, consult *Ethnologue*.



## Notes on Schedule Numbers



**001.9 and 130****Controversial knowledge and Parapsychology and occultism**

Both 001.9 and 130 cover topics that cannot be disproved or be brought into the realm of certain and verifiable knowledge. Works that belong in either 001.9 or 130 include one or more of the following indicators:

1. A claim of access to secret or occult sources
2. A rejection of established authority
3. A pronounced reverence for iconoclasts, for laypersons-become-experts
4. An uncritical acceptance of lay observation of striking phenomena
5. A fixation on the unexplained, the enigmatic, the mysterious
6. A confidence verging on certainty in the existence of conspiracies and the working of malevolent forces
7. An acknowledgment of the powers of extraterrestrial beings or intelligences (other than religious beings)

Use 001.9 for phenomena not closely linked to humans. Use 130 for phenomena closely linked to human beings—the human mind, human capabilities and powers, human happiness. In case of doubt, and for interdisciplinary works, prefer 001.9.

**004–006 vs. 621.39****Computer science vs. Computer engineering**

Use 004–006 for works on (a) computer hardware from the user’s viewpoint, (b) software or firmware, (c) comprehensive works on assembling the physical components and installing the software of a computer system, or (d) comprehensive works on the computer science and computer engineering aspects of a computer topic.

Use 621.39 for works that (a) treat computer hardware solely from the viewpoint of engineering, manufacturing, or repair and (b) do not treat software or the program aspect of firmware. Use 621.39 for works limited to assembling the physical components of a computer system, and for works treating the physical processes of manufacturing firmware chips, not discussing the programs embodied in those chips. Use 621.39 for works treating 004–006 concepts only if the 004–006 concepts are applied to 621.39 concepts, as in computer graphics programs to assist in design of computer circuitry 621.3950285668.

If in doubt, prefer 004–006.

**004 vs. 005****Computer hardware and software**

Use 004 for works on computer hardware and works treating both computer hardware and the “soft” aspects of computer systems—programs, programming, and data. Use 005 for works treating only these “soft” aspects. Use 005.1–.8 together with notation 0285 from Table 1 for works on hardware applied to topics named in 005.1–.8, e.g., parallel architectures for database machines 005.740285435. However, use 004.6 (*not*

005.71) for works on hardware for interfacing and data communications. If in doubt, prefer 004.

*See also discussion at 004.6 vs. 005.71.*

#### **004.0151 vs. 511.1, 511.35**

##### **Computer mathematics**

Use 004.0151 for works on mathematics applied to computers, and for comprehensive works on computer mathematics.

Use 511.1 for works on branches of mathematics in which objects can only have discrete or finite values, and hence can be represented on digital computers. These branches are often collectively referred to as “discrete mathematics” or “finite mathematics.”

Use 511.35 for works on the theory of computer mathematics, without reference to practical implementations on real computers. Use 511.35 for works on Turing machines, because Turing machines are a theoretical concept. This subject is also called automata theory or machine theory.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 004.0151, 511.1, 511.35.

#### **004.1**

##### **Computers and processors**

In 004.1, its subdivisions, and similar numbers elsewhere in 004–006 and 621.39, computers and processors (central processing units) are treated for classification purposes as if they were the same. In fact they are not, but few works about processors can avoid discussing the other parts of the computer with which the processor must interact; hence works about specific types of computers and processors are typically not different enough to justify separate numbers.

##### **Programmable calculators**

Use 510.28541 rather than 004.1 for programmable calculators because they are limited-function computers, capable of working only with numbers, not alphabetic data.

#### **004.1 vs. 004.24**

##### **Performance evaluation**

Use 004.1 for general evaluations of computers, e.g., general evaluations of personal computers 004.16, of a specific kind of personal computer 004.165. Use 004.24 only for specialized works treating performance measurement and evaluation as an aid in designing or improving the performance of a computer system. If in doubt, prefer 004.1.

Add notation 029 from Table 1 to the number in 004.1 if the emphasis is on evaluation as a consideration in purchasing, e.g., evaluation and purchasing manuals for personal computers 004.16029.

#### **004.1 vs. 004.3**

##### **Processing modes**

Many computers, processors, and computer systems can be classified either by type of computer as defined in 004.1 or by processing mode.

Use 004.1 for works that discuss a computer, processor or computer system in general. Use 004.3 only for works that emphasize the processing mode.

For example, the Intel Pentium® processor is a microprocessor that supports multi-programming, interactive processing, and multiprocessing. Use 004.165 for works discussing the Pentium in general. Use 004.357 for Pentium-based multiprocessing computers.

If in doubt, prefer 004.1.

## 004.11–.16

### Types of digital computers

Use 004.11–.16 and 621.3911–.3916 only for works that emphasize the specific type of computer. Use 004 and 621.39 for works that refer to a particular type as an illustration of what computers in general do. For example, use 004, not 004.12, for a general introduction to computers written at a time when the only computers were mainframes. If in doubt, prefer 004 or 621.39 without subdivision.

### Specific computers

Here, “numbers for specific computers in 004–006 ” include 004.125, 004.145, 004.165, 004.1675, 005.265, and numbers in 004–006 built using these numbers, e.g., 006.7765.

Use numbers for specific computers in 004–006 for works treating more than one computer or processor only if:

1. The work treats a single series of very closely related computers or processors (e.g., the Intel Pentium® microprocessors 004.165); or
2. The work treats primarily one specific computer or processor but adds that it is also applicable to other similar machines (e.g., a work about programming the IBM PC® that says it can also be used as a guide to programming “IBM-compatible” computers 005.265).

Use numbers for specific computers in 004–006 for works that discuss a computer and its processor, e.g., a work about the Apple iMac® series of computers and the PowerPC® series of microprocessors 004.165.

If in doubt, do not use numbers for specific computers in 004–006.

## 004.21 vs. 004.22, 621.392

### Systems analysis and design vs. Computer architecture

Use 004.21 for works on computer-based systems involving a computer, application programs, and procedures, usually also other hardware, often a database and communications network, all working together to accomplish a task for the user. Use 004.21 for comprehensive works on systems analysis and design.

Use 004.22 for works focusing on the design and structure of the computer itself and on the computer in relation to its peripheral devices. Most works on computer architecture treat software or the program aspect of firmware as well as hardware; but in the discussion of programs, the focus is on system programs, which make the computer function properly, rather than on application programs, which accomplish user tasks. Use 004.22 for comprehensive works on computer architecture.

Use 621.392 for works that treat computer hardware but do not treat software or firmware.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 004.21, 004.22, 621.392.

#### **004.6 vs. 005.71**

##### **Computer communications**

Use 004.6 for comprehensive works on both the “hard” and “soft” aspects of computer interfacing and communications. Use 005.71 for comprehensive works on “soft” aspects—programming, programs, and data in interfacing and communications. Use 005.7–8 for specific data aspects of interfacing and communications, e.g., error-correcting codes 005.72, data compression 005.746, data encryption 005.824. If in doubt, prefer 004.6.

#### **004.6 vs. 384.3**

##### **Computer communication services**

Use 004.6 for works on computer communication and its hardware in office and private use, works on computer science applied to the technological aspects of computer communication, practical works explaining how to use the hardware and software involved in computer communications, and interdisciplinary works.

Use 384.3 for works on economic and related aspects of providing computer communication services to the public, and works focusing on services and service providers, on broad issues of public good in relation to computer communication.

If in doubt, prefer 004.6.

#### **004.6 vs. 621.382, 621.3981**

##### **Digital communications**

Use 004.6 for works on digital communications that do not emphasize engineering, including works dealing with telecommunications and data communications engineering plus interfacing and communications in computer science.

Use 621.382 for works on digital telecommunications, or digital aspects of both telecommunications and data communications, that emphasize engineering. Use 621.3981 for works on computer data communications that emphasize engineering.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 004.6, 621.382, 621.3981.

*See also discussion at 004.6 vs. 005.71; also at 004.6 vs. 384.3.*

#### **004.678 vs. 006.7, 025.042, 384.33**

##### **Internet and World Wide Web**

The Internet and the World Wide Web (WWW) can be written about from various disciplinary viewpoints. Because the Dewey Decimal Classification is organized by disciplines, it is necessary to decide the focus of a particular work about the Internet or the WWW in order to choose the correct number.

Use 004.678 for works about the Internet or WWW if they contain a substantial amount of computer science material and at least some information about computer hardware, or if they include a comprehensive overview of the Internet as a system of hardware,

software, communications protocols, and other aspects of computer communications included in 004.6.

Use 006.7 for general works about the use of HTML and XML to create hypertext documents on the World Wide Web, and works that discuss web page design or effective web pages.

Use 025.042 for:

1. Interdisciplinary works about the Internet and WWW that do not contain enough computer science material to be classified in 004.678, but that do contain some information science material
2. Information science works that emphasize search and retrieval, including use of web browsers and web search engines to facilitate search and retrieval on the Internet
3. Works that describe information resources available on the Internet or WWW, and on how to find information there

Use 384.33 for works on Internet access providers and works on economic and public policy issues concerning the Internet.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 004.678, 025.042, 006.7, 384.33.

### **005.1–.2 vs. 005.42**

#### **Application programming vs. Systems programming**

Use 005.1–.2 for works on writing application programs and comprehensive works about writing both application and systems programs, including works about writing application programs that run on specific operating systems or user interfaces, e.g., writing application programs that run on the personal computer operating system MS-DOS 005.268, writing application programs that run on the personal computer graphical user interface Microsoft Windows 005.269. Use 005.42 for works about writing systems programs, e.g., writing operating systems 005.42, writing user interfaces 005.428. If in doubt, prefer 005.1–.2.

*See also discussion at 005.3, 005.5 vs. 005.43–.45.*

### **005.1 vs. 005.3**

#### **Programming vs. Programs**

In this discussion, “other programming numbers” comprise 005.2, 005.42, 005.711, 005.712, 006.66, 006.67, and 006.76. “Other numbers for programs” comprise 005.43, 005.5, 005.713, 006.68, and 006.78.

Use 005.1 and other programming numbers for works on writing programs, on software engineering, on modifying existing programs in ways that are typically done by computer programmers. Use 005.3 and other numbers for programs for works on using programs that have already been created by others, including works on writing macros of the kind that are typically written by end users of software packages.

Use 005.1 and other programming numbers for works on programming to achieve reliability, compatibility, portability, and other ideal qualities. Use 005.3 and other numbers for programs for works that discuss whether existing programs actually have these qualities.

Use 005.10218 and 005.150218 for standards for programs and program documentation that are aimed at programmers and documentation writers, to ensure that they produce good programs and documentation. Use 005.30218 and other numbers for programs for works that discuss standards to help users in selecting from among existing programs and documentation.

Use 005.14 for works on testing and measurement as part of program development. Use 005.30287 and other numbers for programs for works that discuss ways for users to test or measure programs as an aid in selection.

Use 005.1 or 005.2 for works devoted equally to programming and programs.

If in doubt, prefer 005.1 or other programming numbers.

### **005.101**

#### **Logic in computer programming**

Use notation 01 from Table 1 only for specialized works with an intense focus on logical analysis. Typically such works treat symbolic (mathematical) logic; use notation 015113 for these works. Do not use notation 01 from Table 1 in 005.1–.2 for general discussions of logic in programming because logic is inherent in programming and is discussed in nearly every work about programming.

### **005.15 vs. 808.066005**

#### **Program documentation**

Use 005.15 for comprehensive works on how to prepare program documentation; works on how to prepare the technical documentation needed by the personnel who will maintain, modify, and enhance the program (including such things as program source listings, program comments, flow charts, decision logic tables, file specifications, program function descriptions, program test history records, modification logs); works on how to prepare program users' manuals that focus on content rather than form; works on policies for program documentation.

Use 808.066005 for works that emphasize effective technical writing—that is, works that emphasize such things as organizing for clarity, writing appropriately for the intended audience, using good paragraph structure, preferring the active voice, using consistent terminology. Typically such works are concerned only with users' manuals.

If in doubt, prefer 005.15.

### **005.268 vs. 005.265, 005.269**

#### **Programming for specific operating systems, for specific computers, and for specific user interfaces**

Numbers beginning with 005.26 are limited to personal computers. Similar numbers for other types of computers, with instructions for building numbers by adding notation from 005.26 numbers, are found in 005.22–.25 and 005.27.

Use 005.268 (and similar numbers for other types of computers) for works on writing software that runs on specific operating systems. Use 005.265 (and similar numbers for other types of computers) for works on writing software that runs on specific computers. Use 005.269 (and similar numbers for other types of computers) for works on writing software that runs on specific user interfaces other than the native interface of the com-

puter operating system. (Class Microsoft Windows® versions through 3.x in 005.269; starting with Windows NT and Windows 95, class Microsoft Windows in 005.268.)

*See also discussion at 005.269 and 005.284, 005.3684, 005.384.*

If two or three of these numbers are applicable to the same work, follow the preference note at 004–006 and class with the number coming last in the schedule (with the exception specified below). For example, if a work treats writing software that runs on a specific computer, on a specific operating system, and on a specific add-on user interface, prefer 005.269. Exception: If a specific computer has only one operating system, so that all programs that run on that computer also run on the operating system, e.g., the Apple iMac® series of computers and Mac OS X®, class writing programs that run on that computer and operating system with the computer in 005.265. Earlier and later versions of the same operating system (e.g., Macintosh System 9® and Mac OS X®) count as one operating system, even though the differences between the earliest and the latest versions may be great.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 005.268 and similar numbers, 005.269 and similar numbers, 005.265 and similar numbers.

### **005.269 and 005.284, 005.3684, 005.384**

#### **User interfaces**

The native interface of an operating system is the user interface bundled inseparably with the operating system.

### **005.3**

#### **Programs**

Class a program or programs designed to run on two types of computers with the predominant type if there is one, e.g., a program that runs on five mainframe computers and one midrange computer 005.32. If neither of two types is predominant, class with the smaller type, e.g., a program for midrange and personal computers 005.36.

Class programs for a specific application in computer science with the application in 005–006, but never in 004. Among the numbers most frequently used for software besides 005.3 and its subdivisions are 005.43 for systems software and operating systems, 005.5 for general purpose application software (such as word processing programs and spreadsheets), 005.713 for interfacing and data communications programs, 005.74 for database management systems, 006.68 for computer graphics programs, and 006.78 for programs for multimedia systems.

Programs applied to a particular subject or discipline are classed with the subject or discipline, plus notation 028553 from Table 1, e.g., programs for tax accounting 657.46028553.

*See also discussion at T1–0285; also at 005.1 vs. 005.3.*

### **005.3, 005.5 vs. 005.43–.45**

#### **Application programs vs. Systems programs**

Use 005.3 for collections of or works about multiple kinds of application programs, and for comprehensive works on application programs and systems programs. Application programs are programs that do things users want done, for example, electronic spreadsheets, statistical packages, word processing programs, desktop publishing programs,

computer games, educational programs, tax preparation programs, inventory control programs.

Use 005.5 for general purpose application programs, such as spreadsheets, statistical packages, word processing programs.

Use 001–999 for application programs employed in a specific discipline, e.g., application programs employed in library operations 025.0028553, computer games 794.8.

Use appropriate subdivisions of 005.3 for works about application programs that run on specific systems, e.g., application programs that run on a specific personal computer operating system 005.3682.

Use 005.43–45 for systems programs and works about them. Systems programs are programs that enable computers to function properly; in effect, they provide life support and housekeeping for computers. Systems programs accomplish little that interests users except to make it possible for application programs to run. Examples of systems programs are operating systems, utilities packages, user interfaces, and programming language translators.

If in doubt, prefer 005.3 and its subdivisions.

*See also discussion at 005.3682 vs. 005.365, 005.3684.*

### **005.3682 vs. 005.365, 005.3684**

#### **Programs for specific operating systems, for specific computers, and for specific user interfaces**

Numbers beginning with 005.36 are limited to personal computers. Similar numbers for other types of computers, with instructions for building numbers by adding notation from 005.36 numbers, are found in 005.32–.35 and 005.37.

Use 005.3682 (and similar numbers for other types of computers) for application programs that run on specific computer operating systems, and comprehensive works on application and systems programs that run on specific computer operating systems. Use 005.365 (and similar numbers for other types of computers) for application programs that run on specific computers, and comprehensive works on application and systems programs that run on specific computers. Use 005.3684 (and similar numbers for other types of computers) for application programs that run on specific user interfaces other than the native interface of the computer operating system, and comprehensive works on application and systems programs that run on specific user interfaces other than the native interface of the computer operating system. (Class Microsoft Windows<sup>®</sup> versions 3.x in 005.3684; starting with Windows NT and Windows 95, class Microsoft Windows in 005.3682.)

*See also discussion at 005.269 and 005.284, 005.3684, 005.384.*

If two or three of these numbers are applicable to the same work, follow the preference note at 004–006 and class with the number coming last in the schedule (with the exception specified below). For example, if a work treats application programs that run on a specific computer, on a specific operating system, and on a specific add-on user interface, prefer 005.3684. Exception: If a specific computer has only one operating system, so that all programs that run on that computer also run on the operating system, e.g., the Apple iMac<sup>®</sup> series of computers and Mac OS X<sup>®</sup>, class programs that run on that computer and operating system with the computer in 005.365. Earlier and later versions of the same operating system (e.g., Macintosh System 9<sup>®</sup> and Mac OS X<sup>®</sup>) count as

one operating system, even though the differences between the earliest and the latest versions may be great.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 005.3682 and similar numbers, 005.3684 and similar numbers, 005.365 and similar numbers.

*See also discussion at 005.3, 005.5 vs. 005.43–45.*

### **005.7, 005.74 vs. 025.04, 025.06**

#### **Data sets, data files, databases**

Data sets are collections of data, possibly unstructured or variously structured. Data files and databases, although there are technical differences between them, are treated as the same for classification purposes and are a specific kind of data set.

Use 005.7 for the algorithms used in storing and retrieving collections of data. Use 005.74 for designing and searching databases, for programming and installing database management systems, in which the databases contain data that is structured or relatively structured.

Use 025.04 or 025.06 for indexing and searching bibliographic and relatively unstructured text databases.

Use 001–999 for the subject content of data sets and databases (and works discussing that content) as if the data sets and databases were books, e.g., chemistry data sets or databases 540. Do not use notation 028557 or notation 0285574 from Table 1 except for works that focus on the computer science aspects of the data sets or databases rather than the subject content.

If in doubt, prefer 005.7 and 005.74.

*See also discussion at 011.39 vs. 005.3029, 016.0053, 025.0422.*

### **005.74 vs. 005.436**

#### **File managers and file organization**

Use 005.74 or 005.75 for a file manager in the sense of software that manages data files, providing the ability to create, enter, change, query and produce reports on a data file or data files. Use 005.436 for a file manager in the sense of software that is used to manage files and directories on a computer, providing the ability to delete, copy, move, rename and view files and directories. A file manager in this latter sense may be part of an operating system or a separate utility program. Use 005.436 for comprehensive works on both kinds of file managers.

Use 005.741 for works on file organization in the sense of the structure of data within a single file that permits access to the data. Use 005.436 for works on file organization in the sense of the way that multiple files are organized on a disk or other storage medium.

If in doubt, prefer 005.74.

### **006.3 vs. 153**

#### **Cognitive science**

Cognitive science is the interdisciplinary study of the mind and computers as information processing systems.

Use 006.3 for cognitive science if the goal is to produce computer systems with better artificial intelligence. Use 153 for cognitive science if the goal is to understand better how the human mind works. If in doubt, prefer 006.3.

### 006.35 vs. 410.285

#### **Computational linguistics vs. Computer applications in linguistics**

Use 006.35 for works on computational linguistics. Use 410.285 for computer applications in linguistics in general. For example, use 410.28553 for general software tools, e.g., programs that generate concordances. If in doubt, prefer 006.35.

### 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399

#### **Computer vision, optical pattern recognition, and optical computers**

##### **Computer vision and optical pattern recognition**

Computer vision and optical pattern recognition both involve recognition of forms, shapes, or other optical patterns for the purpose of classification, grouping, or identification. Optical pattern recognition refers to the algorithms or computational methods that enable recognition of visual patterns, while computer vision refers to an application that typically involves not only (optical) pattern recognition techniques, but also special techniques for pre-processing its input data and for interpreting the output of the pattern recognition techniques.

Use 006.37 or 006.42 for works on computer vision and optical pattern recognition that give substantial treatment to the computer programs needed to interpret optical patterns, and also for works treating computer-vision and optical-pattern-recognition devices from the user's point of view. Use 621.399 for works on designing and manufacturing the hardware for computer vision and optical pattern recognition. If in doubt, prefer 006.37 or 006.42.

Use 621.367 for works on devices that record and process optical signals while doing virtually no interpreting (either because interpretation is not needed or because interpretation is left to others—computers or humans), e.g., devices for image enhancement.

##### **Optical computers**

“Optical computers” is a term used to describe two different kinds of computers. Use 621.391 for works on optical computers that are general-purpose computers in which the central data processing mechanism is based on light (e.g., lasers). Use 006.37, 006.42, or 621.399 for works on optical computers that are special-purpose computers designed to process optical data, regardless of the type of central data processing mechanism.

### 011–017

#### **Bibliographies and catalogs**

The terms *bibliographies* and *catalogs* are used interchangeably in 011–017. The term *bibliographies* is more likely to be used in relation to works brought together on the basis of subject matter, authorship, time period, etc., while the term *catalogs* is more likely to be used in relation to works held in specific collections or offered for sale. The numbers in 011–017 apply equally to bibliographies and catalogs, regardless of the name given to a specific resource.

**011.39 vs. 005.3029, 016.0053, 025.0422****Bibliographies of electronic resources**

Use 011.39 for general bibliographies of electronic resources *not limited to computer programs (or software)*. Use 005.3029 for annotated lists of programs with lengthy reviews that are used as buyers' guides, e.g., a collection of reviews of personal computer software 005.36029. Use 016.0053 for bibliographies and lists of programs and for annotated lists if the annotations are relatively brief. Use 025.0422 for bibliographies of web sites, as they are normally indistinguishable from directories of web sites. If in doubt, prefer 011.39.

*See also discussion at 011–017; also at 005.7, 005.74 vs. 025.04, 025.06.*

**012 vs. 016, 001–999****Personal bibliographies and biobibliographies**

A personal bibliography is a bibliography of works by or about a person. A biobibliography is a bibliography of works by or about a person, combined with substantial biographical material about the person.

Use 012 for both personal bibliographies and biobibliographies of people who are not clearly associated with a specific subject. Use 016 plus notation 001–999 for personal bibliographies of people associated with a specific subject, e.g., a personal bibliography of a psychologist 016.15. Use 001–999 plus notation 092 from Table 1 for biobibliographies of people associated with a specific subject, e.g., a biobibliography of a psychologist 150.92.

Add notation 092 from Table 1 if a personal bibliography includes annotated bibliographic entries of works by the person and the annotations constitute description and critical appraisal of the person's work, e.g., an annotated personal bibliography of a psychologist 016.15092.

**016 vs. 026, T1–07****Bibliographies and catalogs of specific subjects vs. Libraries on specific subjects vs. Table 1 notation for resources for education, research, related topics**

Use 016 or 026 for works describing books, manuscripts, recordings, and the like, unless the works also describe kinds of resources not found in libraries and archives or emphasize how to use the library or archival resources for study, teaching, and research.

Use notation 07 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on resources for education, research, and related topics in a specific subject. Many of these resources are found in subdivisions of T1–07, e.g., schools and laboratories, collections of objects (such as botanical collections), and financial support.

Use 016 for works about resources in a field that describe individual works, such as books and articles. Use 016 also for inventories and calendars of archives. Use notation 07 from Table 1 in 016 if the resources being described treat education and research, e.g., a bibliography of material on education and research in mathematics 016.5107.

Use 026 for works about resources in a field that give broad descriptions of whole collections held by libraries, archives, and other information organizations. Such works often include directory information about the institutions and organizations.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 016, 026, T1—07.

### **080 vs. 800**

#### **General collections vs. Literature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric**

Use 080 for essays and quotations collected for nonliterary purposes, e.g., quotations collected to answer reference questions about who said something familiar. Use 080 also for collections of writings, statements or quotations on a variety of topics, e.g., a collection of quotations by Winston Churchill on various topics 082. Use 800 for a collection of quotations if all or nearly all the quotations come from works of poetry, drama, or fiction. Also use 800 for a collection of essays or quotations if the intent of the collection, as revealed in prefatory matter, is clearly literary, e.g., to exhibit literary style. If in doubt, prefer 080.

### **081–089**

#### **General collections in specific languages and language families**

Class collections originally written in one language or language family with that language or language family. Class collections originally written in two or more languages or language families with the predominant language or language family if there is one. If no original language or language family is predominant, but the work appears in one language as a result of translation, class it with the language in which it appears. Use 080 for collections in which the material appears in multiple languages with none predominant, even if accompanied by translations into the language of the intended audience.

### **130 vs. 200**

#### **Parapsychology and occultism vs. Religion**

Use 130 for parapsychological and occult phenomena if they are not presented as religious, or if there is doubt as to whether they have been so presented, e.g., works on hoodoo in 133.4 even if the term “voodoo” has been applied (*not* 299.675 Vodou). Use 200 for works about parapsychological or occult phenomena if the author describes them as religious, or the believers and practitioners consider them to be religious. If in doubt, prefer 130.

Use 130 for knowledge reputedly derived from secret and ancient religious texts but not applied for religious purposes; however, use 200 for editions of the texts, even if annotated from an occultist viewpoint, e.g., discussion of occult traditions derived from the Zohar 135.47, but the text of the Zohar 296.162.

### **152–158 vs. 150.19**

#### **Specific topics in psychology vs. Psychological systems, schools, viewpoints**

Certain schools and systems draw their fundamental principles from a few selected psychological topics. When such topics are used to illustrate a system, class with the system in 150.19, e.g., the subconscious, fantasies, and dreams used to illustrate psychoanalytic principles 150.195 (*not* 154). If in doubt, prefer the specific topic in 152–158.

**153 vs. 153.4****Conscious mental processes and intelligence vs. Thought, thinking, reasoning, intuition, value, judgment**

Many works that claim to be about thought and thinking or reasoning also cover subjects such as memory, communication, perception, motivation, and intelligence. Use 153 (*not* 153.4) for these broader works. Use 153 (*not* 153.4) also for works on “cognitive psychology.” Use 153.4 only for works that focus narrowly on thought and thinking, reasoning, intuition, value, judgment. If in doubt, prefer 153.

**153.7 vs. 152.1****Perceptual processes vs. Sensory perception**

Use 153.7 for comprehensive works on sensory perception and perceptual processes in general, and works that focus on the active, interpretative mental processes associated with perception in general. Also use 153.7 for types of perception that involve more than one sense, e.g., space perception that involves vision and touch 153.752. Use 152.1 for works that focus on the receptive aspects of sensory perception and comprehensive works on perception by a specific sense, e.g., visual perception 152.14. If in doubt, prefer 153.7.

**155****Differential and developmental psychology**

Some works on the psychology of sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives (152) and conscious mental processes (153) use as research populations people belonging to differential groups, or people subject to environmental influences, that are given in 155.3–9. Use 152–153 for works in which there is clearly little or no interest in the distinctiveness of the group or influence, or in which the researcher has simply used convenient samples. This is particularly applicable to ethnic and national groups (155.8), adults (155.6), and social environment (155.92).

**Sex psychology**

Use 155.3 for a study on sex psychology, drawing almost exclusively upon adult middle-class whites, but showing only marginal interest in the class, age, or ethnic group of the respondents. Use 155.3 also for discussion of the social class, national, or ethnic bias of such research, as the interest is in the validity of the findings about sex psychology.

**155.89 vs. 155.84****National psychology vs. Psychology of specific ethnic groups in areas where they are not predominant**

Use 155.89 for the psychology of nations taken as a whole, and the psychology of ethnic groups that are predominant in an area constituting an independent nation. Use 155.84 for the psychology of ethnic groups taken as a whole and the psychology of ethnic groups in areas where they are not predominant. For example, use 155.89595 for the national psychology of Malaysia or the psychology of Malays in Malaysia; but use 155.849928 for the psychology of Malays taken as a whole, 155.8499280593 for Malays in Thailand. If in doubt, prefer 155.89.

**170.92 vs. 171****Persons associated with ethics vs. Ethical systems**

Use 170.92 for biography, collected works, critical appraisal of the work of an individual moral philosopher if the ethical system represented by the philosopher cannot be determined. Use 171 for biography, collected works, critical appraisal if the ethical system can be determined, e.g., critical appraisal of the ethics of Jeremy Bentham 171.5092. If in doubt, prefer 170.92.

**180–190****History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class single works by individual philosophers with the topic in philosophy. If there is no focus on a specific topic, class a work expressing primarily the philosopher's own viewpoint with the collected works of the philosopher in 180–190, e.g., use 193 for a general work by Hegel, such as *Phenomenology of Spirit*.

Class a work by an individual philosopher that is primarily a discussion of other philosophers' writings with the other philosophers' writings. For example, use 190 for a work by a western philosopher that is mostly a criticism of contemporary philosophers.

Use 100 for a work by an individual that takes a broad look at many questions in philosophy and does not seek to argue for the individual's own viewpoint.

**200 vs. 100****Religion vs. Philosophy**

Both religion and philosophy deal with the ultimate nature of existence and relationships, but religion treats them within the context of revelation, deity, worship. Philosophy of religion (210) does not involve revelation or worship but does examine questions within the context of deity.

Use 200 for any work that emphasizes revelation, deity, or worship, even if it uses philosophical methods, e.g., a philosophical proof of the existence of God 212.1. Use 180–190 for the thought of a religious tradition used to examine philosophical questions without reference to deity or religious topics, e.g., Jewish philosophy 181.06, Christian philosophy 190. However, use 200 for ethics based on a religion. If in doubt, prefer 200.

**200.9 vs. 294, 299.5****Geographic treatment of religion vs. Religions of Indic and of East and Southeast Asian origin**

Use 200.9 for works covering various religious traditions in an area, not just the religions that originated there, e.g., use 200.954 for the religions of India (including Christianity and Islam), use 200.951 for the religions of China (including Christianity and Buddhism). Use 294 and 299.5 for the religions that originated in particular geographic areas. Most of these religions have spread beyond the area where they originated. These areas also have adherents of religions that originated elsewhere, e.g., Buddhism (which originated in India) is present in China. If in doubt, prefer 200.9.

**200.92 and 201–209, 292–299****Persons associated with religions other than Christianity**

Persons associated with the religions in 292–299 are often identified with a number of religious functions and activities. For example, a Hindu guru may be thought of as a theologian, a teacher, a missionary, or a clergyman. If a religious leader cannot be identified primarily with one function, activity, or sect, class the leader's biography in the base number for the religion and add notation 092 from Table 1. Use 200.922 for collected biography of persons from many religions who are not identified with one function or activity. Use a number that corresponds to the number given in the table below for persons associated with a specific religion, e.g., a Buddhist member of a religious order 294.3657092 (corresponds to 206.57092 in the table below). Use the following table of preference for comprehensive biographies of persons primarily identified with one function, activity, or sect:

Founders of religions	206.3
Founders of sects	209
Founders of religious orders	206.57092
Religious leaders (high ranking officials)	200.92
Of specific sects	209
Theologians	202.092
Moral theologians	205.092
Missionaries	207.2092
Martyrs, heretics, saints	200.92
Of specific sects	209
Teachers	207.5092
Members of religious orders	206.57092
Clergy	200.92
Of specific sects	209

Use the subdivisions of 206 for the nature, role, and function of religious leaders. Except for founders of religions (206.3) and founders and members of religious orders (206.57092), do not use the subdivisions of 206 for biography.

Class works dealing with only one aspect of a person's career with the aspect, e.g., Muhammad as a moral theologian 297.5092 (*not* 297.63).

**201–209 and 292–299****Comparative religion**

Except for 296 Judaism and 297 Islam, the subdivisions of the various religions in 292–299 are based on 201–209. All topics in 201–209 are provided for under the separate religions in 292–299, either explicitly, by synthesis, or by implication, even if the order is sometimes different. What is said about 201–209, therefore, will also be true of 292–299.

Compare the topics in 201–209 with the subdivisions of Christianity for clues to placement of specific topics. A comparative list follows:

Social theologies	201.7	261
Doctrinal theologies	202	230
Public worship	203	246–247, 263–265
Religious experience, life, practice	204	242, 248

Religious ethics	205	241
Leaders and organizations	206	250, 262, 267
Pastoral theology and work	206.1	253
Missions, religious education	207	266, 268
Sources	208	220
Denominations, sects, reform movements	209	280

### **Denominations and sects**

Class a denomination or sect with the religion to which its own members say it belongs.

Class the early history of a specific religion before its division into sects as general history of the religion, but class a comprehensive survey of the various sects in the number for the sects of the religion, e.g., the sects and reform movements of Buddhism 294.39. Class a work dealing with both early history and sects in the general number for history of the religion.

Class religious orders in 206.5 and similar numbers in 292–299, not with any sect within the religion to which the orders may belong.

### **203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–.267**

#### **Customs associated with religious holidays**

Use 203.6, 263.9, and similar numbers in 292–299 for the religious customs associated with religious holidays, e.g., sunrise Easter services 263.93, lighting the Hanukkah lamp 296.435. Use 394.265–.267 for the secular customs associated with religious holidays, e.g., Easter egg hunts 394.2667, eating latkes and spinning the Hanukkah top 394.267. If in doubt, prefer 203.6, 263.9, and similar numbers in 292–299.

### **207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299**

#### **Religious education, Christian religious education vs. Education in religion, education in Christianity, in Christian theology**

Use 207.5 (and similar numbers in 292–299, such as 294.575 Hindu religious education or 297.77 Islamic religious education) for works on how various religions educate their members (especially young members) to be good followers of their own religions, usually called “religious education.” Such education stresses knowledge of the faith and living as a member of a religion, and is meant to instill the values of a particular religion, not to study it in a detached manner. Use 268 for religious education as a ministry of the Christian church for the purpose of confirming believers in Christian faith and life, and religious education programs sponsored by the local church.

Use 200.71 for works on education in and teaching of comparative religion, the religions of the world, and religion as an academic subject, usually called “religious studies.” Use 230.071 for works on education in and teaching of Christianity as an academic subject, e.g., a course on Christianity in secular secondary schools 230.0712. Use a similar number in 292–299 for works on education in and teaching of another specific religion as an academic subject, e.g., a course on Hinduism in secular secondary schools 294.50712, on Islam 297.0712.

If in doubt as to which type of education is being treated, prefer 207.5 (or a similar number in 292–299) and 268.

Use 200.711 (*not* 207.5) for works on religious education at the level of higher education, and for works on the education of the clergy. Use 230.0711 (*not* 268) for works on

higher education in both Christianity and Christian theology and for works on education of the clergy; all of this education usually takes place in divinity schools, theological seminaries, and graduate departments of theology or ministry in universities. Class education or training of the clergy for specialized work with the specialty, e.g., courses in Biblical studies 220.0711, programs in Christian pastoral counseling 253.50711. Use similar numbers from 292–299, e.g., university education in Islam 297.0711.

Class study and teaching of specific topics in comparative religion, Christianity, or the specific religions in 292–299, as follows:

Class works on teaching a specific topic to children of primary-school age with works on religious education of children in general, e.g., Christian religious education courses on the Bible for children 268.432; Jewish religious education courses on the Tanakh (scriptures) for children 296.68.

Class works on teaching a specific topic to persons of secondary-school age and older with the topic using notation 071 from Table 1, e.g., study and teaching of Christian church history in secondary schools 270.0712; study of the Tanakh in Jewish colleges and universities 221.0711.

Use 268.434 for Christian religious education of adults, other than in the setting of formal higher education, e.g., works on adult education in religious education programs or Sunday schools in local churches.

## 220–290

### Optional arrangement for the Bible and specific religions

To provide a chronological/regional arrangement for the Bible and specific religions use the optional arrangement of 220–290 that follows. The intention is to provide an alternative view of 220–290 without any changes to the DDC notation. Use the captions provided for each area, and subarrange in Dewey number order.

Prehistoric religions	201.42
Religions of East and Southeast Asian origin	299.5
Religions of Chinese origin	299.51
Taoism	299.514
Confucianism	299.512
Religions of Tibetan origin	299.54
Religions of Japanese and Ryukyuan origin	299.56
Shinto	299.561
Religions of Korean origin	299.57
Religions of Burmese origin	299.58
Religions of miscellaneous southeast Asian origin	299.59
Religions of Indic origin	294
Hinduism	294.5
Jainism	294.4
Buddhism	294.3
Sikhism	294.6
Religions of antiquity	200.93
Celtic religion	299.16
Classical religion (Greek and Roman religion)	292
Germanic religion	293

Iranian/Persian religions	299.15
Zoroastrianism	295
Slavic religions	299.17–.18
Baltic and other Indo-European religions	299.19
Semitic religions	299.2
Ancient Egyptian religion	299.31
Basque religion	299.9292
Elamite religions	299.9293
Etruscan religion	299.9294
Sumerian religions	299.9295
Caucasian religions	299.9296
Gnosticism	299.932
Religions originating among Black Africans	299.6
Religions of North and South American native origin	299.7–.8
Religions of North American native origin	299.7
Religions of South American native origin	299.8
Religions of Papuan, Australian, Malayo-Polynesian and related ethnic origins	299.92
Papuan religions	299.9212
Aboriginal Australian religions	299.9215
Malayo-Polynesian and related religions	299.922
Malagasy religions	299.923
Polynesian religions	299.924
Melanesian religions	299.925
Bible	220
Judaism	296
Christianity	230–280
Islam	297
Babism and Baha'i Faith	297.9
Modern spiritual movements	299.93
Subud	299.933
Theosophy	299.934
Anthroposophy	299.935
Scientology	299.936
Modern paganism, neopaganism, wicca	299.94

**A mapping from Dewey standard notation for 220–290 to  
the Optional arrangement for the Bible and specific religions**

The optional arrangement for the Bible and specific religions shown above provides a chronological/regional organization of the religions of the world without any changes to the DDC notation. Instead, the classifier is advised to “use the captions provided for each area, and subarrange in Dewey number order.” But what if new notation is desired? The mapping below provides a notation that mirrors the optional arrangement, implemented through a series of add instructions.

This table presents a high-level correspondence between Dewey standard notation for 220–290 and an optional notation. The first column of the table gives the Optional arrangement. Column 2 gives the notation set aside for the religion(s) in the standard arrangement, while column 3 gives the corresponding notation for the religion(s) in the optional arrangement produced by this mapping. The notational footprint takes into ac-

count the size of their literatures, their number of adherents, and their perceived significance.

	Standard notation	Optional notation
Prehistoric religions	201.42	201.42
Religions of East and Southeast Asian origin	299.5	220
Religions of Chinese origin	299.51	221
Taoism	299.514	221.2
Confucianism	299.512	221.6
Religions of Tibetan origin	299.54	222.2
Religions of Japanese and Ryukyuan origin	299.56	222.4
Shinto	299.561	222.5
Religions of Korean origin	299.57	222.7
Religions of Burmese origin	299.58	222.8
Religions of miscellaneous southeast Asian origin	299.59	222.9
Religions of Indic origin	294	223–229
Hinduism	294.5	223.1–225.8
Jainism	294.4	226
Buddhism	294.3	227–228
Sikhism	294.6	229
Religions of antiquity	200.93	200.93
Celtic religion	299.16	231
Classical religion (Greek and Roman religion)	292	232
Germanic religion	293	233
Iranian/Persian religions	299.15	234
Zoroastrianism	295	235
Slavic religions	299.17–.18	236.7–236.8
Baltic and other Indo-European religions	299.19	236.9
Semitic religions	299.2	237
Ancient Egyptian religion	299.31	238
Basque religion	299.9292	239.22
Elamite religions	299.9293	239.23
Etruscan religion	299.9294	239.24
Sumerian religions	299.9295	239.25
Caucasian religions	299.9296	239.26
Gnosticism	299.932	239.4
Religions originating among Black Africans	299.6	239.6
Religions of North and South American native origin	299.7–.8	239.7–239.8
Religions of North American native origin	299.7	239.7
Religions of South American native origin	299.8	239.8
Religions of Papuan, Australian, Malayo-Polynesian and related ethnic origins	299.92	239.9
Papuan religions	299.9212	239.912
Aboriginal Australian religions	299.9215	239.915
Malayo-Polynesian and related religions	299.922	239.92
Malagasy religions	299.923	239.93
Polynesian religions	299.924	239.94

Melanesian religions	299.925	239.95
Bible	220	240
Judaism	296	251
Christianity	230–280	252–279
Islam	297	281–298
Babism and Baha'i Faith	297.9	299.1
Modern spiritual movements	299.93	299.2
Subud	299.933	299.3
Theosophy	299.934	299.4
Anthroposophy	299.935	299.5
Scientology	299.936	299.6
Modern paganism, neopaganism, wicca	299.94	299.9

In large part, the mapping consists of add instructions which mirror the development for the Bible or a specific religion as found in the standard notation. The parallelism between the standard and optional notations is emphasized by giving all add instructions in terms of a base number in the optional notation, plus notation taken from the standard notation for the religion, to be added to the base number.

As needed to maintain Dewey's notational hierarchy, captions associated with subordinate notation may become part of the caption at a superordinate number. However, no standard-subdivisions-are-added notes are given. In such a case, the caption appears in square brackets. For example, at 222 is found the caption,

[Religions of Tibetan origin; religions of Japanese and Ryukyuan origin; religions of Korean origin; religions of Burmese origin; religions of miscellaneous southeast Asian origin]

Standard subdivisions cannot be added directly under 222 for any of these specific religions or for any combination of them. Standard subdivisions for the specific religions would be added instead under 222.2, 222.4, 222.7, 222.8, and 222.9.

Any modifications to standard subdivisions found in conjunction with the standard notation apply as well to the optional notation. For example, just as 294[.506] is not to be used, so 223[.06] is not to be used. Just as standard subdivisions under 296.188 are on 3 zeros, so standard subdivisions under 251.188 are on 3 zeros.

Including, class-here, and class-elsewhere notes, and see references are not found in the mappings below, but carry over from the standard development. For example, at 299.6 Religions originating among Black Africans and people of Black African descent in the standard development is found a see reference, *For Black Muslims, see 297.87*. Although no see reference is present at 239.6 Religions originating among Black Africans below, Black Muslims should be classed in 298.7 in the optional arrangement.

The basic principle is that to use the optional notation, one must first determine the most appropriate standard notation, based on all that is present in the standard development, and then use the table above, and the basic development and add instructions below, to convert that notation into the appropriate optional notation.

## 220.92

**Biography of individual persons in Bible**

Class a comprehensive biography of a Biblical person with the book or books with which the person is most closely associated, usually the historical part of the Bible in which the person's life is narrated, e.g., Solomon, King of Israel, in 1st Kings 222.53092. Solomon's association with 223 Poetic books is weaker. However, some Biblical persons are more closely associated with nonhistorical books, e.g., class Isaiah and Timothy with the books that bear their names, 224.1092 and 227.83092, respectively. Although they appear briefly in historical narratives, their lives are not narrated in full there. Use 225.92 for the apostles John, Peter, and Paul, since each is associated with a number of books in the New Testament, but use 226.092 for the other apostles, associated primarily with Gospels and Acts.

*See also discussion at 230–280.*

## 221

**Optional numbers for books of Old Testament (Tanakh)****Alphabetic index**

Each of the books of the Old Testament (Tanakh) and the combination of them can have one of three different numbers depending on whether one chooses the preferred arrangement at 222–224 or one of the two optional arrangements. Optional numbers showing the books in the order found in Jewish Bibles appear as the second half of this entry (Option A) and at 296.11 (Option B). The following alphabetic listing gives the three numbers for each book or combination of books:

Book	Preferred	Option A	Option B
Amos	224.8	223.63	296.1143
Canticle of Canticles	223.9	224.41	296.11641
Chronicles	222.6	224.8	296.1168
Chronicles 1	222.63	224.81	296.11681
Chronicles 2	222.64	224.82	296.11682
Daniel	224.5	224.5	296.1165
Deuteronomy	222.15	222.5	296.1125
Ecclesiastes	223.8	224.44	296.11644
Exodus	222.12	222.2	296.1122
Esther	222.9	224.45	296.11645
Ezekiel	224.4	223.5	296.1139
Ezra	222.7	224.6	296.1166
Five scrolls	221.044	224.4	296.1164
Former Prophets	222	223.1	296.1131
Genesis	222.11	222.1	296.1121
Habakkuk	224.95	223.68	296.1148
Haggai	224.97	223.72	296.1152
Hosea	224.6	223.61	296.1141
Isaiah	224.1	223.3	296.1137
Jeremiah	224.2	223.4	296.1138
Job	223.1	224.3	296.1163
Joel	224.7	223.62	296.1142
Jonah	224.92	223.65	296.1145

Joshua	222.2	223.11	296.1132
Judges	222.32	223.12	296.1133
Ketuvim	223	224	296.116
Kings	222.5	223.14	296.1135
Kings 1	222.53	223.141	296.11351
Kings 2	222.54	223.142	296.11352
Kohelet	223.8	224.44	296.11644
Lamentations	224.3	224.43	296.11643
Later Prophets	224	223.2	296.1136
Leviticus	222.13	222.3	296.1123
Malachi	224.99	223.74	296.1154
Megillot	221.044	224.4	296.1164
Micah	224.93	223.66	296.1146
Minor Prophets	224.9	223.6	296.114
Nahum	224.94	223.67	296.1147
Nehemiah	222.8	224.7	296.1167
Nevi'im	224	223	296.113
Numbers	222.14	222.4	296.1124
Obadiah	224.91	223.64	296.1144
Pentateuch	222.1	222	296.112
Prophetic books	224	223	296.113
Proverbs	223.7	224.2	296.1162
Pslams	223.2	224.1	296.1161
Qohelet	223.8	224.44	296.11644
Ruth	222.35	224.42	296.11642
Samuel	222.4	223.13	296.1134
Samuel 1	222.43	223.131	296.11341
Samuel 2	222.44	223.132	296.11342
Song of Solomon	223.9	224.41	296.11641
Song of Songs	223.9	224.41	296.11641
Torah	222.1	222	296.112
Writings	223	224	296.116
Zechariah	224.98	223.73	296.1153
Zephaniah	224.96	223.71	296.1151

**Optional numbers for books of Bible as arranged  
in Tanakh (Jewish Bible, Hebrew Bible) (Option A)**

The following schedule is an optional arrangement for books of the Bible as found in Jewish Bibles. The preferred arrangement is at 222–224 in the regular schedule. Option B is given at 296.11 in the regular schedule. The see references and footnote instructions in this optional arrangement refer to numbers in the schedules, not to other numbers found in the Manual entries.

> **(222–224) Optional numbers for books of Bible as arranged in Tanakh (Jewish Bible, Hebrew Bible)**

Class comprehensive works in 221

*For Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, see 229*

*See Manual at 221: Optional numbers for books of Bible*

**(222) \*Torah (Pentateuch)**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.1)

**(.1) \*Genesis**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.11)

**(.2) \*Exodus**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.12)

*For Ten Commandments, see 222.6*

**(.3) \*Leviticus**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.13)

**(.4) \*Numbers**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.14)

**(.5) \*Deuteronomy**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.15)

*For Ten Commandments, see 222.6*

**(.6) \*Ten Commandments (Decalogue)**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.16)

**(223) \*Prophetic books (Nevi'im)**

(Optional number; prefer standard 224)

**(.1) \*Former Prophets (Nevi'im rishonim)**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222)

**(.11) \*Joshua**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.2)

**(.12) \*Judges**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.32)

**(.13) \*Samuel**

(Optional number; prefer standard 222.4)

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

- (.131) \*Samuel 1  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.43)
- (.132) \*Samuel 2  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.44)
- (.14) \*Kings  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.5)
- (.141) \*Kings 1  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.53)
- (.142) \*Kings 2  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.54)
- (.2) \*Later Prophets (Nevi'im aḥaronim)**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224)  
*For Isaiah, see 223.3; for Jeremiah, see 223.4; for Ezekiel, see 223.5; for  
Minor Prophets, see 223.6*
- (.3) \*Isaiah**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.1)
- (.4) \*Jeremiah**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.2)
- (.5) \*Ezekiel**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.4)
- (.6) \*Minor prophets**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.9)  
*For Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi, see 223.7*
- (.61) \*Hosea  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.6)
- (.62) \*Joel  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.7)
- (.63) \*Amos  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.8)
- (.64) \*Obadiah  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.91)

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

- (.65) \*Jonah  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.92)
- (.66) \*Micah  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.93)
- (.67) \*Nahum  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.94)
- (.68) \*Habakkuk  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.95)
- (.7) \*Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.9)
- (.71) \*Zephaniah  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.96)
- (.72) \*Haggai  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.97)
- (.73) \*Zechariah  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.98)
- (.74) \*Malachi  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.99)

**(224) \*Writings (Ketuvim)**

(Optional number; prefer standard 223)

- (.1) \*Psalms**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 223.2)
- (.2) \*Proverbs**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 223.7)
- (.3) \*Job**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 223.1)
- (.4) \*Megillot (Five scrolls)**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 221.044)
- (.41) \*Song of Solomon (Canticle of Canticles, Song of Songs)  
(Optional number; prefer standard 223.9)

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

- (.42) \*Ruth  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.35)
- (.43) \*Lamentations  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.3)
- (.44) \*Ecclesiastes (Kohelet, Qohelet)  
(Optional number; prefer standard 223.8)
- (.45) \*Esther  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.9)
- (.5) \*Daniel**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 224.5)
- (.6) \*Ezra**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.7)
- (.7) \*Nehemiah**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.8)
- (.8) \*Chronicles**  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.6)
- (.81) \*Chronicles 1  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.63)
- (.82) \*Chronicles 2  
(Optional number; prefer standard 222.64)

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

## 230–280

**Persons associated with Christianity**

Use the following table of preference for comprehensive biographies:

Jesus Christ, Mary, Joseph, Joachim, Anne, John the Baptist	232.9
Other persons in the Bible	220
Founders of denominations	280
Founders of religious orders	271
Higher clergy (e.g., popes, metropolitans, archbishops, bishops) prior to 1054	270.1–.3
Higher clergy subsequent to 1054	280
Theologians	230
Moral theologians	241
Missionaries	266
Evangelists	269.2
Persons noted for participation in associations for religious work	267
Martyrs	272
Heretics	273
Saints	270
Saints prior to 1054	270.1–.3
Saints subsequent to 1054	280
Mystics	248.22
Hymn writers	264.23
Religious educators	268
Members of religious orders	271
Clergy prior to 1054	270.1–.3
Clergy subsequent to 1054	280
Members of the early church to 1054	270.1–.3
Members of denominations	280
Christian biography of persons who fall in none of the above categories	270

Add notation 092 from Table 1 as appropriate, e.g., collected biography of saints 270.0922; Pope Gregory the Great 270.2092.

Use numbers in the range 220–269 other than those listed in the table of preference above for comprehensive biographies of persons with specialized religious careers, or for works treating only one aspect of a person's life and work, e.g., a Biblical scholar 220.092.

Use subdivisions of 230 for biography and criticism of individual theologians, e.g., Saint Thomas Aquinas 230.2092. Use 230.044092 for Protestant theologians who are not connected with a specific denomination or who are important and influential enough to transcend their own denominations, e.g., Karl Barth 230.044092. Use 230.092 for theologians not connected with any specific type of theology. If in doubt, prefer 230.092. Class critical appraisal of an individual theologian's thought on a specific topic with the topic, e.g., on justification 234.7092.

Do not use 248.2 Religious experience or its subdivisions except 248.22 for comprehensive biographies, e.g., a biography of Teresa of Avila's religious life 282.092 (*not* 248.2092). However, use 248.2 for biographical accounts written for devotional pur-

poses, not as comprehensive accounts of a person's life, e.g., the story of one's conversion 248.246092.

Do not use 253, 255, and 262.1 for biographies of persons who are members of the groups listed in the table of preference above.

Class biographies of members of specific denominations and sects with the main branch of the denomination rather than with the most specific organization or area, e.g., a biography of a member of the Lutheran Church in America 284.1092 (*not* 284.133092); a biography of a clergyman of the African Methodist Episcopal Church 287.8092 (*not* 287.83); a biography of a Russian clergyman of the Orthodox Church 281.9092 (*not* 281.9470092); collected biography of Catholics in the United States 282.092273.

Use 280 without subdivision for members of nondenominational and interdenominational Christian churches. Also use 280 without subdivision if a person living after 1054 belongs to a Christian church, but it cannot be determined which denomination.

If a person does not belong to a church, or if it cannot be determined whether the person belongs to a church, use the historical period that most closely matches the individual's life span or the time period of the individual's greatest prominence in 270 and the country if known, e.g., biography of a 20th-century Christian 270.82092, biography of a 20th-century United States Christian 277.3082092.

*See also discussion at 220.92.*

## 231.7652 vs. 213, 500, 576.8

### **Relation of scientific and Christian viewpoints of origin of universe vs. Creation in philosophy of religion vs. Natural sciences and mathematics vs. Evolution**

#### **Evolution versus creation**

Use 231.7652 for works on creation science or creationism written by Christians who assume that the Bible provides a chronology of natural history and who rely upon religious premises in responding to theories from the natural sciences. Similarly, use 231.7652 for works that attempt to refute creation science, unless they take the writings of creationists as a starting point from which to demonstrate the case for evolution. On the other hand, use 500 for works by creationist authors that attempt to refute evolution theory by examining the writings, hypotheses, and findings of scientists.

The difficulty stems from the fact that on the question of evolution the *pro* and *con* positions differ so radically that they normally belong in different disciplines, science and religion, respectively. However, when a religious author is trying to enlighten scientists on a specific scientific matter, class the work with science, while if a scientist is trying to enlighten the religious on a specific religious matter, class the work with religion. The correct classification is determined by the intent of the author, and the interest of the readers that the author is seeking to reach, not by the truth, falsity, or validity of interpretations and premises.

Use 231.7652 for comprehensive works including both religion and science.

Use 213 for works that consider the relation between divine creation and evolution as a philosophical problem, without appealing to a particular religion or scripture. If in doubt between 213 and 231.7652, prefer 231.7652.

The most common focus of interest of works belonging in 500 is on biological evolution. Use 576.8 for these works. Use 523.88 if the emphasis of a work is mainly on stellar

evolution, 530 if on basic physical principles, 551.7 if on historical geology, and 560 if on paleontology. Use 500 if there is no clear emphasis on a specific branch of science.

**241 vs. 261.8****Christian ethics vs. Christian social theology**

Some topics are covered in both religious ethics and social theology, e.g., war and peace (241.6242, 261.873). Use 241 for works that focus on what conduct is right or wrong. Use 261.8 for works that may discuss right and wrong, but treat the topic in a broader context as a problem in society and discuss Christian attitudes toward and influence on the problem. Use 241 for works that emphasize what the individual should do. Use 261.8 for works that stress what the church's stance should be, what response the church or Christian community should make to alleviate the problem, or the church's view on problems transcending individual conduct. If in doubt, prefer 241.

**260 vs. 250****Christian social and ecclesiastical theology vs. Local Christian church**

Ecclesiastical theology addresses many aspects of the Christian church, including its nature, its mission, its authority, and its government. These aspects concern both the church as a whole and the local church.

The local church is the group in which individual believers can meet regularly face to face for worship, fellowship, and church activities—for example, a congregation, a college church group.

The local church also includes the small groups called basic Christian communities or basic ecclesial communities. These are smaller than parishes or congregations, but, like other forms of the local church, are organized for the general religious welfare of their members, not just for special projects or functions. Class these in the same way as other forms of the local church, i.e., class comprehensive works in 250, and class specific aspects with the aspect in the subdivisions of 250.

Use 260 for works on the church as a whole and for comprehensive works on the church as a whole and the local church. Use 250 for works intended for the individual practitioner in the local setting, for works on the local church in general, and for works on specific local churches. If in doubt, prefer 260.

Use 260 for some activities that can be conducted by the local church, e.g., public worship (264–265), religious education (268), spiritual renewal and evangelism (269), as the context of works on these subjects is often broader than the local church.

Use 261 for the church's response to cultural and social problems, including both its perspective on, or attitude or policy toward such problems, and its activities regarding them, unless the context is limited to pastoral work, e.g., a practical work for the prison chaplain 259.5, but the church's attitude to the treatment of criminals 261.8336. If in doubt, prefer 261.

Use 262.1 for clergy or laity in connection with their authority, function, or role within the church as a whole. Use 250 for clergy and laity in connection with the practical work of ministry and caring for souls, including preaching, visiting in homes, visiting the sick, counseling, and local church administration. If in doubt, prefer 262.1.

Use 262 for church government and organization, unless the scope is limited to administration of the local church (254).

**261.5****Christianity and secular disciplines**

Use 261.5 for personal Christian views and church teachings about secular disciplines as a whole, their value, how seriously a Christian should take them, how far the disciplines should affect faith. Class Christian philosophy of a secular discipline with the discipline, e.g., a Christian philosophy of psychology 150.1. In some cases specific provision is made for use of secular disciplines for religious purposes, e.g., use of drama 246.72. If in doubt, class with the secular discipline.

**270, 230.11–.14 vs. 230.15–.2, 281.5–.9, 282****Early church to 1054 vs. Eastern churches, Roman Catholic Church**

Use 270.1–.3 (*not* 281.1–.4) for the history of the Church prior to 1054, because the early church is considered to be undivided by denominations until the schism of 1054. Use 274–279 for the history of specific churches prior to 1054.

Use 270.1–.3 or 274–279 for the history of the Eastern and Roman Catholic churches before 1054. Use 281.5–.9 or 282 for works on later history or works that cover both the early and later history. If in doubt for works about both Eastern and Roman Catholic churches, prefer 270. If in doubt for works about a specific denomination, prefer 281.5–.9 or 282.

Use 230.11–.14 for theology of Eastern and Roman Catholic churches before 1054. Use 230.15–.2 for later theology.

**280.042 vs. 262.0011****Relations between denominations vs. Ecumenism**

Use 280.042 for works on the ecumenical movement and interdenominational cooperation. Use 280.042 also for works on relations between two or more specific denominations having notation that differs in the first three digits, e.g., relations between Roman Catholics (282) and Lutherans (284.1). Class works about relations among denominations having the same notation in the first three digits in the most specific number that includes them all, e.g., relations among the various Baptist denominations, between Baptists and Disciples of Christ 286. Class works about relations between one denomination and several others with the denomination emphasized, e.g., relations between Baptists and other denominations 286. Class discussions among denominations on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., the Eucharist 234.163. Use 262.0011 for theoretical works on ecumenism. If in doubt, prefer 280.042.

**281.9094–.9099 and 281.94–.99****Orthodox churches and geographic treatment**

Within the Orthodox Church, an autocephalous church (e.g., Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople; Russian Orthodox Church, a.k.a. Moscow Patriarchate) is self-governing, in that its presiding bishop does not report to a higher ranking bishop; an autonomous church (e.g., Church of Finland) is also self-governing, but its presiding bishop is confirmed by an autocephalous church. Most autocephalous and autonomous Orthodox churches are recognized by, and in full communion with, each other. However, some ecclesiastical entities may be recognized as autocephalous by some, but not all, other autocephalous churches; these may be regarded as “arbitrary autocephalous” churches. Independent churches typically claim apostolic succession and often, but

not always, include “Orthodox” in their names, but are not in communion with mainstream autocephalous, arbitrary autocephalous, and autonomous churches; independent churches, which sometimes are characterized as being “in resistance” or “walled off,” include, but are not limited to, Old Calendar and Old Believer churches. In the following notes the phrase “autocephalous church” is used for stylistic convenience; however, the instructions apply fully to arbitrary autocephalous, autonomous, and independent churches.

Exercise caution in distinguishing between the autocephalous Church of Greece (whose territory consists of the whole of Greece except for those parts which belong to the Patriarchate of Constantinople, such as the Dodecanese and Crete) and the Greek Orthodox Church or Greek Orthodoxy (generic terms referring to the set of Orthodox churches associated with Greek or Byzantine liturgy and culture).

A parish is the most specific ecclesiastical entity within the administrative structure of the Orthodox Church. A variety of ecclesiastical entity types exist between autocephalous churches and parishes, going by such names as “diocese,” “archdiocese,” “eparchy,” “exarchate,” and “metropolis.” In the following notes the word “diocese” is used for stylistic convenience; however, the instructions apply fully to archdioceses, eparchies, exarchates, and metropolia.

Historically, all parishes in a geographic territory were governed by the same bishop and thus part of the same diocese and the same autocephalous church. Where such circumstances remain, knowing where a diocese or parish is, is tantamount to knowing which autocephalous church it is part of. However, as adherents of Orthodoxy migrated beyond the boundaries of traditionally Orthodox areas and as administrative structures have been affected by war and other historical events, overlapping jurisdictions have emerged; that is, two or more autocephalous churches may have dioceses and parishes within the same geographic territory. Overlapping jurisdictions currently exist in North and South America, Western Europe, Estonia, and Oceania. Other complexities arise where national boundaries have changed, but where ecclesiastical boundaries have not fully followed suit. For example, in Greece, the New Lands are within the ecclesiastical jurisdiction of the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople, but are administered as part of the Church of Greece; Crete and the Dodecanese Islands are both ecclesiastically and administratively governed by the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople. Such phenomena lead to situations in which parishes or dioceses can only be identified or disambiguated through reference to the relevant superordinate autocephalous church.

Class geographic treatment of Orthodox churches as follows:

1. For geographic treatment of more than one autocephalous church: Use 281.9094–.9099, e.g., Orthodox churches of Europe 281.9094, Orthodoxy in Estonia 281.909479 (two Orthodox churches are active in Estonia, one subordinate to the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople and the other subordinate to the Moscow Patriarchate).
2. For dioceses where the superordinate autocephalous church is not needed for identification or disambiguation and for all parishes, whether or not the superordinate autocephalous church is needed for identification or disambiguation: Use 281.9094–.9099, giving Table 2 notation for the location of the diocese or parish, e.g., Metropolis of Helsinki, a metropolis of the Orthodox Church of Finland, an autonomous archdiocese of the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople 281.909489718; St. Demetrius Ukrainian Orthodox Church, a parish within the

Ukrainian Orthodox Church of Canada, which is a metropolis of the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople, in Toronto 281.909713541.

3. For specific autocephalous churches: Add to base number 281.9 Table 2 notation for the country of the seat of the church, e.g., Russian Orthodox Church 281.947; journal of the Russian Orthodox Church 281.947005 (following instruction that standard subdivisions are on two zeros directly after adding Table 2 notation for country of the seat of the church); Orthodox Church of Estonia, an autonomous church whose primate is confirmed by the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople 281.94798; Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople 281.94961; Romanian Orthodox Church (an autocephalous church), Old Calendar Orthodox Church of Romania (an independent church) 281.9498. This notation is reserved for specific autocephalous, arbitrary autocephalous, autonomous, or independent churches; do not use it for other geographic treatment.

4. For dioceses where the superordinate autocephalous church is needed for identification or disambiguation and for all semi-autonomous churches: After adding Table 2 notation for the country of the seat of the autocephalous church to base number 281.9, add 0 plus Table 2 notation for the location of the diocese or semi-autonomous church (using as the location of a diocese covering more than one country, the country of the seat of the diocese), e.g., Russian Orthodox Church Outside Russia, a semi-autonomous part of the Russian Orthodox Church, with headquarters in the United States 281.947073; Estonian Orthodox Church of Moscow Patriarchate, a semi-autonomous part of the Russian Orthodox Church 281.94704798; Metropolis of Rhodes, a metropolis covering the island of Rhodes, a part of Greece's Dodecanese Islands, which is under the ecclesiastical jurisdiction of the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople, not of the Church of Greece 281.94961049587; Diocese of Britain and Scandinavia (whose seat is in Stockholm), part of the Church of Serbia 281.949710485. As seen below, this notation is not reserved for this use, but is also used for other geographic treatment of specific autocephalous churches. If unable to determine whether reference to the superordinate autocephalous church is needed for identification or disambiguation of a diocese, assume it is not needed, and use 281.9094–9099.

(Option: To give prominence to jurisdictional structure and without regard to whether reference to the superordinate autocephalous church is needed for identification or disambiguation, for a subordinate ecclesiastical jurisdiction: After adding Table 2 notation for the country of the seat of the autocephalous church to base number 281.9, add 0 plus Table 2 notation for the location of the subordinate ecclesiastical jurisdiction, e.g., Metropolis of Korea, an eparchy of the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople 281.949610519.)

5. For other geographic treatment of specific autocephalous churches:

If Table 2 notation has not been added for an ecclesiastical jurisdiction subordinate to a specific autocephalous church, add 0 plus Table 2 notation for other geographic treatment, e.g., Russian Orthodoxy in the United States 281.947073, Russian Orthodox Church in Alaska and the Aleutian Islands 281.9470798.

If Table 2 notation has been added for an ecclesiastical jurisdiction subordinate to a specific autocephalous church, add T1—09 plus Table 2 notation for other geographic treatment, e.g., Spanish Orthodox Church, which belongs to the Diocese

of Britain and Scandinavia (the diocese has its headquarters in Stockholm and is part of the Church of Serbia) 281.9497104850946.

6. For numbers built with 281.94–99: Use the approach for geographic treatment shown above, e.g., doctrines associated with Russian Orthodoxy in the United States 230.1947073, Orthodox missions in Korea in the 20th century 266.19095190904 (missionary work was carried out in 20th century Korea under auspices of both the Russian Orthodox Church and the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople), Orthodox monasteries on Mount Athos 271.8190949565.

## 283–289

### Protestant and other denominations

Under the general name of some denominations, e.g., Presbyterian churches of United States origin 285.1, notation is provided for specific denominations, e.g., 285.13. The specific denominations are named church bodies uniting a number of individual local churches, e.g., the Presbyterian Church (U.S.A.) 285.137, the Associate Presbyterian Church of North America 285.13 (the latter denomination is not listed in the schedule). Along with notation for specific denominations, a span for treatment of the denomination by continent, country, or locality will also be provided, e.g., 285.14–19. Use the notation for specific denominations if the denominations are treated with regard to all or nearly all the geographic area they cover, but use the span for treatment by continent, country, or locality for works on a specific denomination covering a smaller area, e.g., use 286.132 for the Southern Baptist Convention, but use 286.1768 for a state association of Southern Baptist churches in Tennessee (286.1 plus notation 768 for Tennessee from Table 2). Use the span for treatment by continent, country, or locality for individual local churches, regardless of the specific denomination to which they belong. Also use the span for treatment by continent, country, or locality for a work about several specific denominations in one country by area, e.g., a work describing the various Presbyterian denominations in the United States 285.173 (*not* 285.13).

Where the notation for specific denominations is limited to churches that originated in the United States or the British Commonwealth, e.g., the numbers following 284.1, 285.1, 285.2 and 287.5, use the span for treatment by continent, country, or locality for specific denominations in other areas, e.g., use 284.135 for the Evangelical Lutheran Church in America, but use 284.1485 (284.1 plus notation 485 for Sweden from Table 2) for the Lutheran Church of Sweden.

## 296.092

### Persons associated with Judaism

Use the following table of preference for comprehensive biographies of persons associated with an identifiable function, activity, or sect in Judaism:

Persons in Tanakh	221–224
Priests prior to 70 A.D.	296.495092
Persons associated with rabbinical literature, Halakhah	296.12–.18
Founders of denominations and movements	296.8
Theologians	296.3092
Cantors	296.462092
Religious educators	296.68092
Rabbis of specific denominations and movements	296.8
Rabbis	296.092

Members of sects and movements 296.8

Class works dealing with only one specialized aspect of a person's career or religious experience with the aspect, e.g., an account of return from non-observance to religious observance 296.715092.

Use 296.092 for religious biography of a Jew who cannot be identified primarily with one function, activity, or sect.

## 297.092

### **Persons associated with Islam**

Use the following table of preference for comprehensive biographies of persons associated with an identifiable function, activity, or sect in Islam:

Muhammad the Prophet	297.63
Muhammad's family	297.64
Muhammad's companions	297.648
Prophets prior to Muhammad	297.246092
Other persons in Koran	297.122092
Founders of sects and reform movements	297.8
Founders of Sufi orders	297.48
Higher non-Sufi religious leaders	297.092
Of specific sects and movements	297.8
Theologians	297.2092
Moral theologians	297.5092
Da'wah workers	297.74
Leaders and members of Sufi orders	297.48
Other Sufis (mystics)	297.4
Religious educators	297.77092
Mosque officers	297.092
Of specific sects and movements	297.8
Members of sects and movements	297.8

Use 297.61 Leaders and their work for the role, function, and duties of religious leaders, not for biography of religious leaders.

Class works dealing with only one specialized aspect of a person's career or religious experience with the aspect, e.g., an account of conversion to Islam 297.574092.

Use 297.092 if a Muslim cannot be identified primarily with one function, activity, or sect.

## 297.26–.27

### **Islam and secular disciplines**

Use numbers outside 200 for works that focus on issues of importance to practitioners of a secular discipline and for works that describe achievements of Muslims working within the discipline, but use 297.26–.27 for works that focus on Islamic theological issues in relation to secular disciplines. For example, class works describing achievements of Islamic arts with art, but use 297.267 for Islamic attitudes toward the arts, e.g., what kinds of music and visual arts are consistent with Islamic beliefs. Use 320.91767 (political situation and conditions in the Islamic world) or another subdivision of 320 for a work on Islam and politics that emphasizes issues primarily of concern to political

scientists, but use 297.272 for a work on Islam and politics that emphasizes Islamic religious issues. If in doubt, prefer a number outside 297.

**299.93****New Age religions**

Class New Age perspectives on health and medicine, environmentalism, gardening, and other activities and areas of knowledge with the subject and discipline under discussion, even if the discussion rejects some of the main tenets of the discipline, e.g., using mental energy to cure illness 615.851.

Use 130 and its subdivisions for New Age literature mostly concerned with psychic and paranormal phenomena.

Use 201–209 for works on some aspects of religion from a New Age perspective if the works do not attempt to speak for a particular known religion or to establish a new religion or sect, e.g., use 204 for a New Age perspective on spirituality.

Use 299.93 for works concerned with several New Age religions, but use 200 if the work includes sects of the more established religions, e.g., sects of Buddhism, Hinduism, Native American religion, etc.

Use 299.93 for comprehensive works on the New Age as a whole or as a movement.

**300–330, 355–390 vs. 342–347, 352–354****Bills, hearings, and legislative reports**

Use 300–330 and 355–390 for:

General hearings and related reports, e.g., hearings on the state of the United States economy 330.973

Hearings and related reports on public policy

Oversight hearings and related reports that focus on whether present appropriations, laws, and public policies are meeting the needs of society

Hearings and related reports of legislative investigations not related to proposed legislation, e.g., investigations into political corruption 364.131

Military appropriation and authorization bills, hearings, and related reports

Use 342–347 for:

Bills, hearings, and reports relating to ordinary laws

Bills (including authorizations and appropriation bills) and related hearings and reports that establish government agencies. Use the number for the subject with which the agency deals, e.g., a bill to establish the U.S. Department of Education 344.73070262

Hearings on judicial nominations. Use numbers in 345 and 347, e.g., a hearing on a nomination to the U.S. Supreme Court 347.732634

Use 352–354 for:

Hearings and related reports on nonmilitary authorizations and appropriations that do not emphasize public policy and the needs of society. Use 352.49 plus notation 023

from the table under 352.493–.499 for general hearings and reports, e.g., hearings on appropriations in Germany that do not emphasize public policy and the needs of society 352.4943023. Use the number for a specific agency plus notation 249 from the table under 352–354 for hearings and reports on a specific agency that do not emphasize public policy and the needs of society, e.g., hearings that do not emphasize health policy on appropriations to support health facilities 353.68249, to support health care facilities in Germany 353.6824943023

Oversight hearings focusing on agency internal performance. Use the number for the agency, e.g., an oversight hearing on internal performance of the U.S. Bureau of Indian Affairs 353.53497073

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 300–330 and 355–390; 352–354; 342–347.

*See also discussion at 300, 320.6 vs. 352–354: Nomination hearings.*

### **300, 320.6 vs. 352–354**

#### **Social sciences and policy formulation vs. Specific topics of public administration**

##### **Public policy**

Use 001–199, 300–349, 355–399, 600–999 for the public policy itself (what the policy is or should be, as distinct from how it is formulated or administered) in specific fields, e.g., public policy for libraries 021.8, economic development and growth policies 338.9, welfare policy 361.61, arts policy 700; however, religious policy is classed in 322.1, language policy in 306.449, and science policy in 338.926. However, use 323 for policies with civil rights implications, e.g., citizenship policy 323.6 (*not* 303.4833 or 353.48).

Certain policies have names that suggest one discipline but actually concern another. For example, use 338.926 for technology policy, technology transfer policy, research and development (R and D) policy, and even science policy if formulated in terms of promoting economic growth and development.

Use 320.6 for interdisciplinary works on policy formulation, and works on how society as a whole makes up its mind. Governments usually, but not always, make up the leading parties in policy formulation, e.g., presidents, governors, courts, and legislatures at various levels. Use 320.6 for policy formulation led or mediated by agencies in two or more branches of government, but use 352.34 for policy formulation conducted by executive agencies, how an executive decides upon policies and gets them carried out. Class policy formulation in a specific field by “the government” or society with the policy as explained above, but class policy formulation by executive agencies in specific fields in 352–354, plus notation 234 derived from 352.34.

For example, use 323 for a work about what civil rights policies are or should be, and on how society as a whole decides what they should be; 353.48234 for a work on how a civil rights agency resolves policy issues; and 353.485 for a work on how to administer civil rights policies. Similarly, use 338.9 for a work on economic development, 354.27 for a report on an economic development agency, and 354.27234 for a work on policy making in an economic development agency.

If in doubt, prefer the number outside public administration.

### Nomination hearings

Class all nomination hearings for executive officers in 352–354, because it is difficult to determine whether emphasis is on matters like personal qualifications and administrative issues or on the policies that the agency should carry out. Class nominations for the head of an agency in the field that the agency administers, plus notation 2293 from the table under 352–354, e.g., nomination hearing for an attorney general 353.42293.

*See also discussion at T1—068 vs. 353–354.*

## 300 vs. 600

### Social sciences vs. Technology

Use 300 for works that discuss the social implications of a technology, e.g., the economic importance of lumbering 338.17498 (*not* 634.98). Use 300 for works on the social utilization, the social control, and the social effect of technology. Use 600 for works that discuss how to make, operate, maintain, or repair something, e.g., manufacture of motor vehicles 629.2.

Use 300 rather than 600 for the following categories of material:

1. Works that emphasize the social use of the topic rather than operating or processing it, e.g., tea drinking in England 394.12 (*not* 641.33720942 or 641.63720942)
2. Works that emphasize the overall perspective, e.g., the shift from coal to oil in American industry 333.82130973 (*not* 621.4023)
3. Works that emphasize the social control as opposed to the control exercised during the manufacturing process, e.g., standards of drug quality imposed by a government agency or a trade association 363.1946 (*not* 615.19)
4. Works that cite raw statistics, e.g., crop production, acreage, fertilizer consumption, farm size 338.1 (*not* 630)

### Technical reports

Use 300 for technical and research reports that emphasize procedural technicalities and refer to economic, legal, administrative, or regulatory complexities. Consider the purpose of the writer and the mission of the agency authorizing the reports in determining the classification of a report series, and of individual reports in a series. Use 300 if the emphasis is on the exercise of social control over a process or the social aspects of technological processes, e.g., water quality monitoring systems 363.739463 (*not* 628.161), a work describing how railroads serve Argentina 385.0982 (*not* 625.100982); a report on fertilizer and rice studying production efficiency in developing countries 338.162 (*not* 633.1889).

### Interdisciplinary works

Use 300 as the interdisciplinary number for a phenomenon of social significance, e.g., wind energy 333.92, railroad transportation 385; however, use 600 for works that emphasize descriptions of structures or products, e.g., windmills 621.453, locomotives 625.26.

**Biography and company history**

Use 600 for works on artisans, engineers, and inventors. However, use 338.7 for works on artisans, engineers, and inventors who are of more interest as entrepreneurs, e.g., Henry Ford 338.76292092.

Use 600 (or 700 if the interest is artistic) for works on the products of specific companies that emphasize the description and design of the products, e.g., Seth Thomas clocks or Ferrari automobiles. However, use 338.7 if the organization or history of the company receives significant attention, e.g., Seth Thomas clocks 681.113097461, but the Seth Thomas Clock Company and its clocks 338.7681113097461.

**301–307 vs. 361–365****Sociology vs. Social problems and services**

Use 301–307 only for works on social phenomena that focus on the phenomena themselves and not on actual or potential remedies to any social problems that those phenomena may cause.

Use 361–365 for works on social phenomena that focus on actual or potential remedies to the social problems that those phenomena cause.

Examples:

1. Use 306.85 for the family as a social phenomenon.
2. Use 306.88 for a work discussing the effect of the changing social roles of men and women in the dissolution of the family.
3. Use 362.82 for a work that discusses actual and potential remedies for family dissolution.

If in doubt, prefer 301–307.

**302–307 vs. 150, T1—019****Social psychology vs. Psychology**

Use 302–307 for works that focus on group behavior, including those that discuss the role of the individual in group behavior. Use 150 for works that focus on the individual, including those that discuss the influence of group behavior on the individual. If in doubt, prefer 302–307.

Use 302–307 without adding notation 019 from Table 1 for application of social psychology to a subject, e.g., social psychology of religion 306.6. Use the number for the subject plus notation 019 from Table 1 for the application of psychology to a subject, e.g., individual psychology of religion 200.19. If in doubt, prefer 302–307.

**302–307 vs. 156****Comparative psychology**

Use 302–307 for works considering the social behavior of animals as a background to human social behavior. Use 156 for works on comparative social psychology when used to shed light on the behavior of the individual. If in doubt, prefer 302–307.

**302–307 vs. 320****Specific topics in sociology and anthropology vs. Political science**

Use 302–307 for works on social institutions, processes, and phenomena if they emphasize how the social topics are related to and manifested in political ones, even if they have a political cast. Only use 320 for works on political institutions, processes, and phenomena in which the political aspects are emphasized. For example, use 305.42 (not 324.623) for a work on the relation between the feminist movement and the enfranchisement of women. If in doubt, prefer 302–307.

**303.483 vs. 306.45, 306.46****Social effects of science and technology**

Use 303.483 for the effects of scientific discoveries and technological innovations upon society, e.g., a work on the transformation of religious, economic, and leisure institutions stemming from the development of electronic media 303.4833. Use 306.4 for the patterns of behavior of the individuals and groups engaged in scientific or technical endeavors, e.g., a description of the milieu that seems to be conducive to technological innovation 306.46. If in doubt, prefer 303.483.

**305.6 vs. 305.92, 306.6****Sociology of religion and religious groups**

Use 305.6 for the sociology of a group of people who are identified as belonging to a particular religion, especially if they are a minority group in a particular place, e.g., a work on the sociology of Christians in Indonesia 305.67598.

Use 305.92 for the sociology of a group of people whose occupation is religious, e.g., a work on the sociology of shamans 305.920144, a work on the sociology of people in Christian religious orders 305.9255.

Use 306.6 for the sociology of religious institutions considered from a secular viewpoint, e.g., a work on the sociology of the Christian Church 306.66.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 306.6, 305.6, 305.92.

**305.9 vs. 305.5****People by occupation vs. People by social and economic levels**

Use 305.9 for works on an occupational group when either

1. there is little or no emphasis on social or economic level,
2. the group is well represented in two or more distinct social or economic levels, or
3. the group has an indefinite or transitional status.

Use 305.5 for works on an occupational group considered in terms of its specific social status. If in doubt, prefer 305.9.

**306 vs. 305, 909, 930–990****Groups of people vs. Culture and institutions vs. History**

Use 305 for groups of people, e.g., women as a social category 305.4. Use 306 for social institutions, e.g., the family 306.85. Use the number for the institution in 306,

plus notation 08 from Table 1, for the role of a specific group in a specific institution of society, e.g., women in the family 306.85082.

Use 909 and 930–990 for the role of groups of people in history, and for accounts of the major events shaping the history. In particular, use 909 and 930–990 for the history of ethnic and national groups.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 306, 305, 909, 930–990.

**307****Communities**

Use 307 for works on the community in a relatively restricted area as a social phenomenon and works on community planning, development, and redevelopment. These terms are used here in their ordinary meaning to imply the planning for and development of the community as a whole. Use 300 apart from 307 for works where specific subjects of community interest are addressed, e.g., economic development of the community 338.93–.99, developing hospitals for the community 362.11, planning community housing 363.5525, planning the city water supply 363.61, planning the education system 379.4–.9.

**320 vs. 306.2****Politics of political institutions vs. Sociology of political institutions**

Use 320 for works on the descriptive, comparative, historical, and theoretical study of political institutions and processes, in which the social environment is considered only as a background. Use 306.2 for works on the social dynamics of political institutions, the social sources (e.g., ethnic group, class, family) and the social processes of political institutions, or the impact of these institutions and their activity on the social environment. Use 306.2 also for works dealing with political institutions and processes as models for social institutions and processes. If in doubt, prefer 320.

**320.557 vs. 297.09, 297.272, 322.1****Islamism and Islamic fundamentalism**

Use 320.557 for works emphasizing the religiously oriented political ideologies of Islamism or Islamic fundamentalism; and for works on Islamism or Islamic fundamentalism that emphasize political aspects from a secular viewpoint.

Use 297.09 and other subdivisions of 297 only for works that emphasize religious aspects of Islamism or Islamic fundamentalism, such as a concern to maintain and hand down a pure version of the Islamic faith, a mindfulness to follow the strict letter of the Koran and Hadith, an attempt to generate a religious reawakening through preaching, teaching, and other forms of religious communication. Use 297.272 only for works that treat politics from the religious point of view.

Use 322.1 for works emphasizing the political role of Islamist or Islamic fundamentalist organizations and groups in relation to the state.

Use notation 082 Religious parties from table under 324.24–.29 for Islamist parties that function as regular political parties, e.g., Turkish Islamist parties 324.2561082, comparative studies of Islamist parties 324.2182.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 320.557; 322.1, 324.2; a subdivision of 297.

**320.9, 320.4 vs. 351****Government vs. Public administration**

Government is limited to considerations of the nature, role, goals and structure of states; their political direction and control; and how central controls are exercised and balanced against each other. Public administration concentrates on executive agencies and the procedures used to carry out their goals, policies, and actions in various fields.

Use 320.9 for works that discuss the habitual conduct and methods of people in high office, even if they appear to cover the structure and functions of government.

Use 320.4 for works on the overall structure of governments, emphasizing their chief legislative, judicial, and executive organs, or for works that discuss typical activities of the different branches, e.g., regulating safety as an illustration of the police function. Use 320.4 also for comprehensive works on government and public administration of specific areas, but not for works emphasizing the work of carrying out goals and policies. Use 320 for interdisciplinary works on government and public administration not limited to specific areas.

Use 351 for works that emphasize agencies of the executive branch, or the usual components of administration: planning, organizing, staffing, financing, and equipping agencies to do a job.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 320.9, 320.4, 351.

**322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299****Politics and religion**

Use 322.1 for works discussing the relationships between religious organizations or movements and states or governments from a secular perspective. Use 201.72, 261.7, and similar numbers in 292–299 for works on the position that religious people and organizations take or should take toward political affairs (including the state). If in doubt, prefer 322.1.

**324 vs. 320****The political process vs. Politics and government**

Use 324 for works limited to party politics, but use 320 for comprehensive works on politics. “Politics” in the caption at 320 covers the concepts of adjusting relationships among individuals and groups in a political community, guiding and influencing the policy of government, and winning and holding control of society. If in doubt, prefer 324.

*See also discussion at 909, 930–990 vs. 320.*

**324 vs. 320.5, 320.9, 909, 930–990****Political movements**

Use 324 for works on the attempts of political movements to achieve power by nonviolent means and their ventures into electoral politics (even as splinter parties with scant chance of success). Use 320.5 for works concerning the thought and internal history or dynamics of political ideological movements. Use 320.5 also for comprehensive works on specific ideological movements. Use 320.9 for the impact of these movements on the political system and their interaction with other political forces. Use 909, 930–990 for

works on movements that come to power or directly affect the major events of history. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 324, 909 and 930–990, 320.9, 320.5.

*See also discussion at 909, 930–990 vs. 320.*

### **324.2094–.2099 and 324.24–.29**

#### **Political parties in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Use 324.209 (or 324.21 for specific kind of party) for treatment of political parties by continent and by region larger than a specific country, e.g., political parties in Europe 324.2094; Conservative parties in Europe 324.214094.

Use 324.24–.29 for treatment of political parties by country, using area notation for country from Table 2, followed by notation to express the party, e.g., political parties in United Kingdom 324.241; the Conservative Party 324.24104.

Use the country number in 324.24–.29, followed by notation to express the party, plus notation 09 from Table 1, for treatment of political parties by locality within a country, since in most countries the local party is a branch of the national party, or, at least, a local organization of persons who regard themselves as members of a national party, e.g., the Conservative Party in Wales 324.2410409429 (*not* 324.242904). Use the same rule for works on regionalist parties, e.g., a regionalist party in Wales 324.241098409429 (*not* 324.2429084). Use the national number, plus modified standard subdivision 324.2094–.2099 and 009, for comprehensive works on parties of a specific part of a nation, e.g., parties of Wales 324.241009429, of Catalonia 324.246009467.

However, for Canada, the United States, and Australia, each of which has strong traditions of autonomy for state and provincial parties, the political parties of states and provinces are treated like “countries” rather than like “localities,” e.g., political parties of New York State 324.2747 (*not* 324.27309747); the Democratic Party in New York State 324.274706 (*not* 324.273609747). Regions and localities are subordinated to national or state and provincial numbers, e.g., the Democratic Party in the Midwest 324.27360977, in New York City 324.274706097471.

### **330 vs. 650, 658**

#### **Business**

Use 330 for works on business that present general information, economic conditions, financial information (such as interest rates), and reports on what certain companies are doing. Use 650 for works on business that emphasize practical managerial information and that cover 651 Office services as well as 658 General management. Use 658 if the work is limited to management. Use 330 for comprehensive works on 330 and 650. If in doubt, prefer 330.

### **331.120424 vs. 331.1377**

#### **Full employment policies vs. Prevention and relief of unemployment**

Use 331.120424 for works on government labor policies and programs wider than simply combating unemployment, e.g., public service employment as a measure to provide both jobs for the unemployed and assistance to distressed areas and state and local governments. Use 331.1377 for works on government labor policies and programs that discuss them solely in terms of prevention and relief of unemployment. If in doubt, prefer 331.120424.

**332, 336 vs. 339****Macroeconomics**

Use 332 and 336 for works on economic topics considered in their own right, e.g., monetary activities of central banks 332.112. Use 339 if the topics are discussed in relation to the total economic picture of a country or region, since macroeconomics is the study of the economy as a whole, especially with reference to its general level of output and income and the interrelationships among sectors of the economy, e.g., activities of central banks undertaken primarily to carry out macroeconomic policy 339.53. If in doubt, prefer 332 and 336.

**332 vs. 338, 658.15****Financial topics in production economics and financial management**

Use 332 for works discussing financial topics from the viewpoint of people or organizations with money to invest and those who serve them—investors, bankers, stockbrokers, and the like. Use 338 for works discussing financial topics from the viewpoint of people concerned with the production of goods and services, or who are interested in capital because it is necessary for production. For example, use 332.6722 (domestic investment in specific types of enterprise) for a work discussing whether mining is a safe and profitable field of investment for the general public; but use 338.23 (financial aspects of extraction of minerals) for a work discussing whether the mining industry will attract enough investment to expand production. Use 658.15 (or the subject plus notation 0681 from Table 1) for works discussing financial topics from the viewpoint of an executive responsible for the financial management of an organization, or works that focus narrowly on managerial concerns. If in doubt, prefer 332.

**332.632044 vs. 332.6323****Gilt-edged securities**

Use 332.632044 for works on all types of gilt-edged securities. In American usage the term may refer to any security of exceptionally high quality, or it may refer primarily to high-quality bonds. Use 332.6323 for works only on bonds. Use 332.63232 also for British works on gilt-edged securities, as in British usage the term refers to government bonds. If in doubt, prefer 332.632044.

**332.6322 vs. 332.6323****Stocks**

Use 332.6322 for stocks in the sense of shares (American usage), but use 332.6323 for stocks in the sense of bonds (British usage). If in doubt, prefer 332.6322.

**333.7–9 vs. 363.1, 363.73, 577****Social aspects of ecology**

Use numbers in 300 rather than 577 for works on ecology and specific natural environments that discuss public policy and resource economics rather than biology. Class works on natural resource management, environmental impacts and monitoring, risk assessment, development, conservation and biodiversity as follows:

1. Natural resource management: Use 333.7 or the number for the specific resource, e.g., management of wetlands 333.918.

## 2. Environmental impacts and monitoring:

A. The resource situation in general: Use 333.7 or the number for the specific resource (without adding any further subdivisions), e.g., monitoring biodiversity 333.95;

B. Environmental impacts: Use 333.714 or the number for the specific resource plus notation 14 from the table under 333.7–9, e.g., monitoring the impact of reclamation projects on wetlands 333.91814;

C. Pollution levels: Use 363.7363 or the number for the specific kind of pollutant or environment plus notation 63 from table under 362–363, e.g., monitoring oil pollution 363.738263. (However, use 333.7–9 as instructed under 2. B. above for the impact of pollution, e.g., monitoring the impact of oil pollution on wetlands 333.91814);

D. Potential environmental impacts: Class with the development whose impact is being studied, e.g., the potential impact of an oil pipeline on tundra ecology 388.55.

## 3. Risk assessment:

A. Generalized risks to the environment: Class as an impact study in 333.714 or the number for the specific resource plus notation 14 from the table under 333.7–9, e.g., contemporary risks to wetlands of America 333.918140973;

B. Safety risks: Use the subdivision for the specific threat in 363.1 plus notation 72 from the table under 362–363, e.g., assessing the risk to humans of pesticides in food 363.19272;

C. Risks of specific developments: Class with the specific development as a study of potential impacts, e.g., assessing the risk of tourism to biodiversity in East Africa 916.7604.

4. Development: Use 333.715 or the number for the specific resource plus notation 15 from the table under 333.7–9, e.g., hydroelectric power development 333.91415.

5. Conservation: Use 333.72 or the number for the specific resource plus notation 16 from the table under 333.7–9, e.g., conservation of biodiversity 333.9516.

6. Biodiversity: Use 333.95 (especially for works emphasizing its value or importance).

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 333.7–9, 363.1, 363.73, 577.

*See also discussion at 363.73 vs. 571.95, 577.27.*

**333.7–9 vs. 363.6****Natural resources and energy vs. Public utilities**

Use 333.7–9 for comprehensive works on resources, projection of needs and supplies, development, conservation and protection of resources. Use 363.6 for works on problems and services related to utilities distributing and delivering the resources to users. Use 333.7–9 for “supply” as a noun, but use 363.6 for “supply” as a verb. If in doubt, prefer 333.7–9.

However, use 333.7932 for a work about distribution of electrical power by utilities if the work emphasizes the problems of developing the supply of electricity, says little

about the problems of distributing the electricity to customers, and does not discuss prices without reference to production costs.

Use 333.717 or a number for a specific resource in 333.7–9 plus notation 17 from the table under 333.7–9 for works on the rationing of natural resources still in their natural state, but use 363 for works on the rationing of final products, e.g., wellhead allocation of natural gas for companies or jurisdictions 333.823317, but rationing of natural gas among consumers or classes of consumers at the other end of the line 363.63. If in doubt, prefer 333.717 and numbers for specific resources in 333.7–9.

### **333.7–9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990**

#### **National parks and monuments**

Use 333.7–9 for works on national parks where the main attraction is nature if the emphasis is on conservation and protection of natural resources, e.g., forest parks 333.784, game reserves 333.954916. Use 508 or other numbers in 500 if the emphasis is on description of and guides to natural phenomena, e.g., a comprehensive guide to the natural history of Yellowstone National Park 508.78752, a guide to the geology of Yellowstone 557.8752.

Use 913–919, plus notation 04 from the table under 913–919 followed by notation for the historical period when the guidebook was written, for general guidebooks to all the national parks of an area, e.g., a 1989 general guidebook to the national parks of South America 918.0438.

Class general works about historical monuments with the events commemorated. For example, class a battlefield national park with the battle, e.g., Gettysburg National Military Park 973.7349. Class a park associated with the life of an individual in the biography number for that individual, e.g., Lyndon B. Johnson National Historical Park 973.923092, George Washington Carver National Monument 630.92.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 333.7–9; 508 and other numbers in 500; 930–990; 913–919.

*See also discussion at 913–919: Historic sites and buildings; also at 913–919: Add table: 04: Guidebooks; also at 930–990: Wars; also at 930–990: Historic preservation.*

### **333.72 vs. 304.28, 320.58, 363.7**

#### **Environmentalism**

Use 333.72 for works on environmentalism discussing the broader concept of preserving and protecting the supply as well as the quality of natural resources and for works about the environmental movement that focus on the concerns it shares with the long established conservation movement. Use 304.28 for works that emphasize the effect upon society of overuse, misuse, or pollution of the environment. Use 320.58 for works that emphasize the political ideologies of environmentalism. Use 363.7 for works on preserving and restoring the quality of the social living space, i.e., taking care of wastes, pollution, noise, the dead, and pests. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 333.72, 304.28, 363.7, 320.58.

**333.73–.78 vs. 333, 333.1–.5****Natural resources vs. Land economics**

Use 333.73–.78 for works on land as a natural resource, as a source of economic goods (chiefly agricultural and mineral), and for works on the usage of the land and its resources. Use 333.73–.78, plus notation 17 from the add table under 333.7–.9, for works on control of usage regardless of who owns the land, e.g., price control, zoning. Use 333.73 for comprehensive works on land policy.

Use 333.73–.78 for land inventories, which often focus on land as a resource and land usage.

Use 333 for comprehensive works on land and on natural resources only if the works contain substantial discussion of ownership. It is more common for comprehensive works on land to contain substantial discussion of ownership than comprehensive works on other natural resources. Use 333.7–.9 for comprehensive works on natural resources that treat predominantly nonownership aspects. If in doubt, prefer 333.7–.9.

Use 333.1–.5 for land as property, where the central issues are the right to possession and use, and the right to transfer possession and use. Use 333.1–.5 for control of land only if the control is the kind that stems from ownership.

Use 333 for comprehensive works on both 333.1–.5 and 333.73–.78 with respect to land only if the works contain substantial discussion of ownership. Use 333.1–.5 for works on the right to use land and its resources. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 333.73–.78, 333.1–.5, 333.

**333.955–.959 vs. 639.97****Conservation and management of specific kinds of animals**

Conservation and resource management are primarily economic concepts. Use 333.955–.959 for works on conservation of specific kinds of animals if the works discuss public policy and programs; give estimates or statistics of populations, abundance, harvest, catches, and kills; make appeals for resource management; and issue calls to protect an animal or save it from extinction. Use 639.97 for works that discuss agricultural methods and techniques and how to carry them out.

A few terms used in conservation work are troublesome because they may refer to either economics or technology. Use 333.955–.959 for works on rescue, reintroduction, management, and habitat improvement of specific kinds of animals, if the works are focused on programs and the rationale behind the activities. Use 639.97 only if the work is focused on hands-on activities where the animals are living.

If in doubt, prefer 333.955–.959.

**335 vs. 306.345, 320.53****Socialism and related systems in economics, sociology, and political theory**

Use 335 for interdisciplinary works on socialism and related systems, and works on their philosophic foundations, since they are based upon theories of how the economy does or should work. Use 335 also for wide-ranging works that do not fit within normal disciplinary boundaries but are clearly about socialism and related systems. Use 335 also for works discussing how another economic system should be reorganized into a socialist system.

Use 306.345 only for sociological studies of how socialist economic systems work out in practice.

Use 320.53 for works that emphasize how political movements intend to introduce socialism and what political forces they expect to harness to attain and keep power, or that discuss political movements and forces without in-depth discussion of the economic dynamics or theory.

Works in 320.53 and 335 may include material that is prescriptive, that says how society, the economy, or the political system ought to be organized. If in doubt, prefer 335.

### **337.3–9 vs. 337.1**

#### **Foreign economic policies and relations of specific jurisdictions and groups of jurisdictions vs. Multilateral economic cooperation**

Use 337.3–9 for works on relations between a cooperative group treated as a whole and other countries or groups, e.g., economic relations of the European Union with Japan 337.4052, economic relations of the European Union with the rest of the world 337.4. Use 337.1 for works on cooperative relations among the states of multistate groups, e.g., cooperation within the European Union 337.142. If in doubt, prefer 337.3–9.

### **338.091–.099 vs. 332.67309, 338.6042**

#### **Location of industry and investment**

Use 338.091–.099 for works showing where industry is in fact located, i.e., for works that consider location as a condition. Use 338.6042 for works on the rationale for and the process of locating business organizations, i.e., for works that consider location as an action.

Use 332.67309 for works describing the advantages and disadvantages of making international investments, including establishing international enterprises, in particular areas.

If in doubt, prefer 338.091–.099.

### **338.092**

#### **Business biography**

Use 338.0922 for collected biography of businesspeople in many fields. Use 338.040922 for collected biography of entrepreneurs in many fields.

Use 338.1–4 for biographies of business leaders not limited to a specific enterprise but limited to a specific field, e.g., business leaders in the automotive manufacturing industry 338.4762920922. Use 338.6–8 for biographies of people associated with the development and operation of specific types of enterprises but not confined to a specific industry or group of industries, e.g., small-business owners 338.6420922, people associated with trusts 338.850922. Use 338.70922 for biographies of company directors on the boards of companies in several industries or groups of industries. Use 338.76 for a biography of an entrepreneur or business leader associated with a specific business enterprise, e.g., the founder of a cosmetics manufacturing company 338.766855092.

**338.1 vs. 631.558****Crop yields**

Use 338.1 for works on crop yields that are compilations giving the total production of an area. Use 338.16 for works on yields per unit of area if they are taken as indicators of production efficiency, either of agricultural systems using various methods (e.g., crop rotation) or of agricultural systems prevailing in various areas. Use 631.558 only for works that have little or no economic or testing implications, e.g., lists of record yields of various crops. Class with the subject in agriculture if yield studies per unit of area are used in technical tests of varieties or specific production techniques, e.g., yield tests of fertilizer 631.80287. If in doubt, prefer 338.1.

**338.926 vs. 352.745, 500****Science policy**

Science policy generally focuses on what society should do to promote the utilization of science and the growth of industries and activities based on science. Use 338.926 for works on science policy regarded as a policy or program to promote economic development and growth (use similar numbers in 338.93–99 for science policy for economic development in specific areas, e.g., Europe 338.9406). Use 352.745 (and similar numbers in 352–354, built with 352.745) for works on public administration of science policy. Use 354.274 for works that emphasize administration of economic development. In the absence of a focus on the social sciences, use 509 for natural science policy in an area. If in doubt, prefer 338.926.

**340, 342–347 vs. 340.56****Civil law**

Use 340 for comprehensive works that treat civil law as all law that is not law of nations or criminal law (342–344, 346–347). Contrast civil law in this sense with criminal law (345). Use 340.56 for works that treat civil law as a system of law derived from Roman law that is in use to a greater or lesser extent in most countries in the modern world, e.g., Germany, France, Japan, Brazil, and even in some subordinate jurisdictions of countries that otherwise use another system, e.g., the province of Quebec in Canada and the state of Louisiana in the United States. If in doubt, prefer 340.

**340, 342–347 vs. 340.57****Common law**

Use 340 and 342–347 for works that treat common law as the system of law of England and other countries, such as the United States, whose law is derived from English law, or that treat common law as the branch of English law that derives from the old English courts of common law as opposed to the branch of law known as equity that grew up in the Court of Chancery. Use 340.57 for works that treat common law as law that is not the result of legislation but rather of custom and judicial decision. If in doubt, prefer 340.

**340 vs. 808.06634****Legal writing**

Use the number for the subject in 340 for works on the composition of legal briefs, law reports, and other documents if the work emphasizes how to make the document comply

with the law, e.g., how to draw up a legal contract 346.022. Use 808.06634 for works that emphasize techniques of composition. If in doubt, prefer 340.

### 340.02–.09 vs. 349

#### Geographic treatment of law

Use 340.02–.09 for works intended to be general in coverage, even if most examples are taken from a specific jurisdiction. Use 349 for works limiting the law to a specific jurisdiction. For example, use 340.03, general law dictionaries, (*not* 349.7303, dictionaries of American law), for *Black's Law Dictionary*, even though the majority of the cases cited are from the United States. Use 340.025752 for a directory of lawyers who can practice law not only in Maryland but also in other parts of the United States and whose place of residence is in Maryland, but use 349.752025 for a directory of lawyers who can practice in Maryland but whose place of residence need not be in Maryland. If in doubt, prefer 340.02–.09.

### 340.52

#### Nondominant legal systems associated with specific ethnic groups

In the context of 340.52, a legal system may be nondominant for cultural, economic, demographic, political, or historical reasons—or for any combination of those reasons. In former colonies, the dominant legal system may continue to be primarily that of the former colonial powers, and customary law of the indigenous peoples may remain nondominant, even after the indigenous people have become politically dominant.

If the nondominant legal system is tied primarily to religious affiliation, then a number for religious law should be used, e.g., 340.59 Islamic law.

The relationship of nondominant and dominant legal systems varies widely.

1. A nondominant legal system may be officially recognized by the dominant legal system and linked to a specific ethnic group.
2. A nondominant legal system may be officially recognized and linked to a specific area, such as a United States Indian reservation, where an indigenous ethnic group and its law are sovereign.
3. A nondominant legal system may not be officially recognized by the dominant legal system.

#### Geographic treatment

For works about a nondominant legal system that is officially recognized and linked to a specific ethnic group or cluster of related groups, use the area notation for the jurisdiction that recognizes the law, plus notation 089 from Table 1, unless it is redundant, e.g., customary marriage law of indigenous African peoples of South Africa 346.6801608996. Use that same approach for issues arising from differences between the nondominant legal system and the dominant legal system, e.g., conflict between constitutional requirements for equality of men and women and customary laws of succession that privilege men in South Africa 346.6805208996. In federal systems, if both a province and the nation recognize the nondominant law, and both jurisdictions are equally relevant to a particular case or issue, use the area notation for the nation.

For works about a nondominant legal system that is officially recognized and linked to a specific area where the indigenous group and its law are sovereign, use the notation for the specific area. Also use notation 089 from Table 1, unless it is redundant. For laws of

a specific United States federally recognized (sovereign) tribe, use the area notation for the region or county containing the largest portion of the tribe's reservation or in which the headquarters of the tribe is located, e.g., family law of Navajo Nation, Arizona, New Mexico & Utah 346.79130150899726. Use that same approach for issues arising from differences between the nondominant legal system and the dominant legal system, e.g., dispute about land tenure of Oneida Nation of New York 346.747620432089975543. For laws of the dominant legal system that apply to multiple indigenous groups and their reservations, use the area notation for the jurisdiction issuing the laws, e.g., United States federal Indian law 342.730872.

For a nondominant legal system that is not officially recognized, use the area notation appropriate to the scope of the work, e.g., the area where the people who observe the law live or the jurisdiction that the author argues ought to recognize it.

### **Comprehensive works**

Use 340.52 for comprehensive works on law of indigenous peoples around the world. Use 340.52 plus notation 089 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on the nondominant legal system of an ethnic group spread across multiple continents, e.g., law of Roman people 340.5208991497.

Use 340.524–.529 for comprehensive works on historical forms of legal systems that are currently nondominant but may once have been dominant, e.g., comprehensive works on law of North American native peoples in what is now the United States before arrival of Europeans 340.5273.

Also use 340.524–.529 for comprehensive works on contemporary nondominant legal systems of indigenous peoples in multiple countries in the same continent, e.g., African customary law 340.526. Also use 340.524–.529 for comprehensive works on contemporary nondominant indigenous law that is officially recognized but not tied to a specific area where the indigenous law is sovereign, e.g., comprehensive works on customary law of Nigeria 340.52669, comprehensive works on Yoruba customary law of Nigeria 340.526690899633.

Use 348–349 for comprehensive collections of and treatises on indigenous law that is officially recognized and linked to a specific area where the indigenous group and its law are sovereign, e.g., collected laws, regulations, cases of Navajo Nation, Arizona, New Mexico & Utah 348.791300899726, comprehensive treatise on law of Blackfoot Tribe of the Blackfoot Indian Reservation of Montana 349.7865208997352.

### **Treaties**

Use 341 for texts of treaties between colonial or settler governments and indigenous peoples and for discussions that focus on the treaties themselves, e.g., Treaty of Waitangi (1840) 341.026641008999442. However, use 342–347 for legal works that discuss early treaties in relation to specific topics of domestic law, e.g., Treaty of Waitangi in relation to Maori land claims 346.93043208999442.

## **340.9**

### **Conflict of laws**

Use 340.9 for works where the key issue is usually which jurisdiction's laws are to govern the case, e.g., whose laws will govern in the case of a Canadian citizen married in France to a citizen of Germany and later divorced in Mexico when a dispute arises as to the disposition of jointly owned personal property? Although usually called private

international law, it is not the law governing the interrelationships of nations, but the law governing the conflicts and disputes between private citizens of different nations, and its material is drawn from private law.

### 341 vs. 327

#### **Law of nations vs. International relations**

Use 341 for works that discuss the standards and principles that it is commonly felt should govern international relations, or for works that discuss concrete events from the standpoint of the problems that they pose to this system of order. Use 341.026 for works on treaties and cases of international courts. Use 327 for works that discuss what is actually transpiring in international relations (including the theory as to why things happen as they do), and the effects of what has happened. If in doubt, prefer 341.

### 341.45 vs. 343.0962

#### **Law of the sea vs. Law of ocean transportation**

Use 341.45 for works emphasizing jurisdictional issues of law of the sea, i.e., works that discuss the problems that arise from the fact that the high seas are outside the jurisdiction of any nation. Use 343.0962 for works emphasizing transportation issues of maritime law or admiralty law that consider legal issues that could arise either within or outside a single national jurisdiction. If in doubt, prefer 341.45.

### 342–349

#### **Geographic treatment of law**

Class law limited by geographic area as follows:

1. For law limited to a specific jurisdiction: Use 349 or 342.3–.9 (and parallel numbers, e.g., 343.3–.9) plus the area number for that jurisdiction, e.g., law of Germany 349.43, railroad law of Germany 343.43095.
2. Class the laws of local jurisdictions (cities, counties, subprovincial jurisdictions) as follows:

For the laws of a specific local jurisdiction: Use 349 or 342.3–.9 (and parallel numbers, e.g., 343.3–.9) plus the area number for the local jurisdiction, e.g., tax laws of Bayreuth, Bavaria 343.4331504; by-laws relating to public parks in Sheffield, England 346.42821046783.

For the laws of all the localities of a given area: Use the area number for the jurisdiction that contains the localities, e.g., tax laws of the cities of Bavaria 343.43304, of the cities of Germany 343.4304, laws relating to the public parks of cities in the United Kingdom 346.41046783.

Do not observe the principle of approximating the whole for jurisdictions for which there is no specific area number, i.e., subdivisions may be added for a jurisdiction not having its own number, e.g., Flint, Michigan's and Mt. Morris, Michigan's ordinances governing mental health services to the addicted 344.77437044. (Flint is in an including note at T2—77437 in Table 2, which normally means subdivisions may not be added for it. Mt. Morris, a suburb of Flint, is not mentioned in the including note, but subdivisions may still be added).

3. For the application of law of a specific jurisdiction to a limited area within that jurisdiction: Use the number for the law of the jurisdiction plus notation 09 from

the table under 342–347, e.g., German law as practiced in Bavaria 349.4309433, application of German railroad law in Bavaria 343.4309509433.

4. For law limited to a specific regional intergovernmental organization: Use 349.2 or 342.2 (and parallel numbers, e.g., 343.2) plus the area number for that organization, e.g., law of European Union 349.24, railroad law of European Union 343.24095.

5. Class the laws of more than one jurisdiction other than those of a specific regional intergovernmental organization as follows:

For a collection of laws from various jurisdictions located in a particular area: Use 349 or 342.3–.9 (and parallel numbers, e.g., 343.3–.9) plus the area number for that area, e.g., law of Germany, France, Italy 349.4, railroad laws of Germany, France, Italy 343.4095.

For laws that affect more than one jurisdiction: Use 341 or 342.3–.9 (and parallel numbers, e.g., 343.3–.9) plus the area number for the area affected, e.g., treaties among Germany, France, Italy 341.02644, international laws regulating disarmament in Germany, France, Italy 341.733094, international laws regulating railroads in Germany, France, Italy 343.4095.

*See also discussion at 340.02–.09 vs. 349.*

### **Law of countries with federal governments**

In federally organized countries, e.g., the United States, Australia, Federal Republic of Germany, there are two sets of laws: those of the central jurisdiction (national laws) and those of subordinate jurisdictions (laws of the provinces or states). Use the area number for the subordinate jurisdiction for laws of an individual state or province, e.g., criminal law of Virginia 345.755, of New South Wales 345.944. However, use the area number for the federal jurisdiction for laws of the states or provinces taken as a whole, e.g., criminal laws of the states of the United States 345.73, of the states of Australia 345.94. Use the area number for the region for works on the state and provincial laws of a region, e.g., provincial criminal law of western Canada 345.712.

### **Use of area number for capital districts**

Use the area number for the capital district if the laws are, in effect, local laws even though passed by the national legislature, e.g., use notation 753 from Table 2 for laws of Washington, D.C., even though the United States Congress passes some of these laws.

### **Jurisdiction in time**

Class the laws of an area that was at some point not an independent jurisdiction as follows:

1. If the law is still operative in the now-independent jurisdiction, use the area number for the jurisdiction in question. For example, use notation 5491 from Table 2 for a law that is currently operative in Pakistan, even though it was enacted before Pakistan became independent, e.g., use 347.5491052 for the Limitation Act of 1908.

2. If the law is no longer operative in the now-independent jurisdiction, use the area number for the jurisdiction that was previously dominant. For example, use notation 54 from Table 2 for India for a law of 1908 no longer operative in Pakistan.

**342.085 vs. 341.48****Civil rights vs. Human rights**

Use 342.085 for works on the political and social rights of individuals that are recognized by the laws of a particular jurisdiction or group of jurisdictions. Use 341.48 for works on the political and social rights that are recognized by international agreements (such as the Universal Declaration of Human Rights) as the inherent and inalienable rights of all human beings. If in doubt, prefer 342.085

**343.04–.06 vs. 336.2, 352.44****Tax law vs. Taxes and taxation vs. Revenue administration**

Use 343.04–.06 for most works on taxes, especially popular works, because they usually explain what the law allows and prohibits, e.g., a work for taxpayers about U.S. income tax deductions 343.730523. Use 336.2 for works on the economics of taxes and interdisciplinary works on taxes, e.g., an economic and political analysis of U.S. tax policy 336.200973. Use 352.44 for works on tax administration, especially the administration of assessment and collection. If in doubt, prefer 343.04–.06.

**343.078 vs. 343.08****Regulation of secondary industries and services vs. Regulation of commerce**

Use 343.078 for works discussing regulations for topics such as production quotas, quality of the material produced, sizes of products specified, e.g., what services hotels are permitted to provide, how they are to provide them, and what rates they may charge 343.07864794. Use 343.08 for works discussing regulations for topics such as truth-in-labeling, advertising practices, and other aspects of marketing, e.g., how hotels may advertise 343.085564794. If in doubt, prefer 343.078.

**345.02 vs. 346.03****Criminal offenses vs. Torts (Delicts)**

Use 345.02 for acts considered as criminal offenses, but use 346.03 if those acts are considered as torts (a part of civil law), e.g., libel and slander considered from the standpoint of criminal law or brought as a criminal action 345.0256, but considered as a tort or brought as a civil action 346.034. Whether a particular act is regarded as a crime or as a tort or as neither will often depend on the jurisdiction, e.g., adultery may be regarded as a crime for which the offender may be prosecuted, a tort for which the offender may be sued, or merely as a fact to be adduced in evidence in a divorce case. If in doubt, prefer 345.02.

**347****Jurisdiction**

The location of the court does not necessarily determine the jurisdiction involved in procedure and courts, e.g., use 347.744 for procedure in a court in Boston, Massachusetts, if it is a state court, but use 347.73 if it is a United States district court.

**351 vs. 352.29****Organization and structure of government agencies**

Use 351 for general descriptions of administrative agencies and their work if the descriptions cover a representative sample of the agencies of a jurisdiction, e.g., a work

on the ministries of the Indian government 351.54. Use 352.29 only for works emphasizing the organizational aspects of departments and agencies, e.g., a work detailing the organizational patterns of agencies of the Indian government 352.290954. If in doubt, prefer 351.

*See also discussion at 352–354: Add table: 22.*

### **351.3–.9 vs. 352.13–.19**

#### **Administration in and of subordinate jurisdictions in specific areas**

Use 351.3–.9 for descriptive works on administration of individual jurisdictions regardless of kind, e.g., administration of the government of Ontario 351.713, of Cook County (Illinois) 351.7731, of Northern Highland (Scotland) 351.41152. This approach ensures consistent classification of works on administration of specific subordinate jurisdictions, since a classifier does not need to decide to which category a specific government belongs, e.g., whether Cook County is urban, or Northern Highland is rural.

Also use 351.3–.9 for works on administration of an individual jurisdiction and its subordinate jurisdictions, e.g., administration of Ontario and its local authorities 351.713. Use 352.13–.19 plus notation 09 from Table 1 only for general treatises on subordinate jurisdictions or on specific kinds of subordinate jurisdictions, e.g., provincial administration in Canada 352.130971, county administration in Illinois 352.1509773, rural administration in United Kingdom 352.170941.

The distinction between 351.3–.9 and 352.13–.19 is carried over under specific topics of public administration in 352–354. Use 352–354 plus notation 093–099 from Table 1 for reports and practical works on the administration of a specific activity in a given jurisdiction or region, e.g., administration of social welfare in Ontario 353.509713. Use 352–354 plus notation 213–219 from the add table at 352–354 (and with notation 093–099 from Table 1) for theoretical and general descriptive works on how state (provincial) and local administration of a subject in a specific higher jurisdiction or region has been or should be conducted, e.g., local administration of social welfare in Ontario 353.521409713.

If in doubt, prefer 351.3–.9.

### **352–354**

#### **Specific topics of public administration**

##### **Agencies and their divisions**

Use the same number for the administration of a function and the administration of an agency designated to perform that function. For example, use 354.50973 for both public administration of agriculture in the United States and administration of the United States Department of Agriculture. Also use the same number for an administrative report of a specific agency and an independent study of the functions that the agency performs. For example, use 354.5097305 for both the Annual Report of the United States Department of Agriculture and an independent journal on agricultural administration in the United States.

Use the number that best fits the responsibility of a specific agency. For example, use 352.5 for a general services agency having a wide range of miscellaneous functions, so long as the predominant duty concerns property administration (as is often the case), even if it has sections on archives and personnel training.

For works on a part of an agency, use the number that best fits the responsibility of that part of the agency, even if the number differs from the number for the agency as a whole. For example, use 352.53 for a procurement section in a general services agency, and 352.669 for a personnel training section in such an agency. For an archives section in the agency, use either 352.744 if it promotes archival activity or 026.93-.99 if it maintains general archives of the jurisdiction.

In some cases, the schedule gives a specific name of a generalized type of agency in a class-here note at a given number, referring to a typical agency with such a name. An agency with a similar name but a different function should be classed according to its function. Only when there is a conspicuous difference in the usage of different countries do notes in the schedule explain the difference. For example, at 353.3 one note reads "Class here home departments and ministries, European style interior ministries"; another note reads "See also 354.30973 for United States Department of the Interior."

Use the same number for two agencies that independently cover approximately the same field. However, use notation from the table under 352-354 for an agency that has a different relation to the subject. For example, use 354.760973 for the United States Department of Transportation, but use 354.76280973 for the former United States Interstate Commerce Commission (the ICC, which regulated transportation, not commerce). The base number for administration of transportation (354.76) and the final notation for area (T1-0973) are the same in both cases, but notation 28 for regulation is interposed between them for the ICC.

Use notation in 352-354 for agencies provided for in 352-354, even when the agencies are nominally subordinate to a nonexecutive branch of government. For example, use 352.430973 for the United States General Accounting Office, which is officially part of the legislative branch, but which performs a classical executive function of reviewing accounts and judging the effectiveness of expenditures throughout the government.

*See also discussion at T1-068 vs. 353-354.*

### Add table

22

#### Organization and structure of government agencies

Use a number in 352-354 without adding notation 22 for general works on specific agencies, e.g., a work describing the Indian Home Ministry 353.30954. Use numbers in 352-354 plus notation 22 only for works emphasizing the organizational aspects of departments and agencies. If in doubt, prefer the number in 352-354 without notation 22.

*See also discussion at 351 vs. 352.29.*

2293

#### Heads of departments and agencies

##### Secretaries of state

Use notation 2293 for secretaries of state in the United Kingdom and countries in the Commonwealth of Nations, where the term is a generic one for heads of executive departments, often of cabinet level. (General works on this kind of secretary of state are classed in 352.293.)

Use 353.22930973 for the Secretary of State of the United States, a position equivalent to foreign minister or minister of foreign affairs in most other countries.

Do not use notation 2293 for secretaries of state in states of the United States. Most state secretaries of state may be classed in 352.387 plus notation 0974–0979 from Table 1 when their central duty is the authentication, maintenance, and preservation of important state papers and other records, and the compilation of organization manuals of the state government. When the office of a specific secretary of state has a range of duties that does not fit comfortably in the records management number, class the office in other numbers in 352–354.

#### Agencies named for their heads

Do not use notation 2293 from the add table with numbers in 352–354 for departments (usually quite small ones) named for their heads, e.g., offices of inspectors general or offices of ombudsmen. These agencies, and reports issued in the name of their heads, are classed in the number that most nearly approximates their duties, e.g., reports of inspectors general and ombudsmen 352.88, reports of ombudsmen in personnel agencies 352.6235.

#### 27–28

##### Public administration of supporting and controlling functions of government

Use notation 27 and 28 in fields where the role of government is commonly both supportive and regulatory. For example, use notation 27 throughout 354 in the special sense of administering development, or research and development, as explained under 354.27 in the schedule. Likewise, use notation 28 in much of 354 in the special sense of controlling public utilities, as explained under 354.428 and 354.728 in the schedule.

Do not use notation 27 in fields where the primary role of government is supportive, and do not use 28 in fields where the primary role of government is regulatory. For example, use 353.78 (*not* 353.7827) for administration of recreation agencies, because most recreation agencies support recreation; and use 353.9 (*not* 353.928) for administration of safety agencies, because the primary role of safety agencies is safety regulation. Use notation 27 and 28, however, for the less common function of these agencies, e.g., works on regulating recreation 353.7828, and works on administration of programs promoting safety 353.927.

#### 352.13 vs. 352.15

##### **State and provincial administration vs. Intermediate units of local administration**

Use 352.13 for territorial subdivisions with an extent that places them distinctly above “local administration,” regardless of what they are called. The following list indicates the major territorial units that can currently be regarded as equivalent to “states and provinces” as defined in the note at 352.13:

- Argentina (provinces)
- Australia (states)
- Brazil (federal units)
- Canada (provinces)
- Chile (regions)
- China (provinces, autonomous regions)
- (former) Czechoslovakia (regions)
- Ethiopia (federal states)

France (regions)  
 Germany (states)  
 India (states)  
 Indonesia (provinces)  
 Iran (provinces)  
 Italy (regions)  
 Japan (regions)  
 Korea (regions)  
 Mexico (states)  
 Nigeria (states)  
 Pakistan (provinces)  
 Peru (regions)  
 Philippines (regions)  
 Russia (provinces, territories, autonomous republics)  
 South Africa (provinces)  
 (former) Soviet Union (union republics)  
 Spain (autonomous communities)  
 Sudan (regions)  
 United States (states)  
 (former) Yugoslavia (republics, autonomous provinces)

Also use 352.13 for similar units that may be created in the future, and for “territories” in the sense of areas on the road to statehood, e.g., historic treatment of administration in territories of the United States 352.13097309.

Use 352.16 for general treatment of special urban units coordinate with states and provinces, e.g., administration of nationally controlled municipalities in China 352.160951.

Use 352.15 for all other units intermediate between the national governments and the primary units of local administration.

### 355–359 vs. 623

#### **Military science vs. Military and nautical engineering**

Use 623 for physical description, design, manufacture, operation, and repair of ordnance; use 355–359 for procurement and deployment, and also for the units and services that use the ordnance. Histories of the development of weapons emphasizing the interplay of human and social factors are regarded as procurement history, and are classed in 355.8 and similar numbers in 356–359 (e.g., 359.8, numbers built with notation 8 from add table under 356–359). If in doubt, prefer 355–359.

### 355.1409

#### **History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class uniforms of several participants in a particular war in the area number corresponding to the one used for the war in general history, e.g., uniforms of the Peninsular War (part of the Napoleonic Wars classed in 940.27) 355.14094, not 355.140946.

Class uniforms of a specific branch of the armed services with the branch, e.g., uniforms of the Royal Air Force 358.41140941.

**359.32 vs. 359.83****Ships as naval units vs. Ships as transportation equipment and supplies**

Use 359.32 or similar numbers in 359.9 (e.g., 359.933, 359.9435, 359.9853) when a work on ships focuses on matters normally covered by analogous works on regiments and other military units, e.g., the crew and its organization, duties, effectiveness, and history. Works about a specific ship will usually consider the ship as a naval unit (unless there is only one ship of a class). Use 359.83 or similar numbers in 359.9 (e.g., 359.9383, 359.94835, 359.98583) when the work focuses on development, procurement, operation, and actual or potential combat effectiveness of the hardware, or when discussion of personnel or personalities focuses on persons responsible for development and procurement of ships, e.g., Admiral Rickover's work in developing nuclear submarines 359.93834092. Use 359.83 also for comprehensive works. If in doubt, prefer 359.32.

Use notation 09 from Table 1 plus country numbers from Table 2 for either specific ships, or a number of ships of a specific class employed by a specific nation.

**361–365****Social problems and services**

Problems and services are often linked terms, and, where one is spelled out, the other is implied, e.g., addiction at 362.29 implies services to the addicted, and services of extended medical care facilities at 362.16 imply the problems that require such services.

*See also discussion at 300 vs. 600.*

**361–365 vs. 353.5****Social problems and services vs. Public administration of social welfare**

Much of the material on social problems and services consists of government reports or gives considerable emphasis to the political and legal considerations related to social services. Use 361–365 for reports about welfare programs and institutions or for works that focus on the problem or the service, e.g., a discussion of political obstacles to effective poverty programs 362.5, a discussion of the political maneuvering behind the adoption of an act of the United States Congress spelling out a new housing program 363.580973. Use 353.5 for reports concentrating on the administrative activities of agencies supporting and regulating the programs and institutions. If in doubt, prefer 361–365; however, prefer 353.5 for administrative annual reports of government agencies.

**361 vs. 362–363****Social problems and social welfare in general vs. Specific social problems and services**

Use 361 for comprehensive works on the whole range of problems and services found in 362–363, for works on principles and methods of assessing and solving the problems when the works do not address a specific problem, and for works on the principles and methods of welfare work in general. Use the number for a specific problem in 362–363, plus notation 5 from the table under 362–363, for works on the application of the principles and methods to a specific problem, e.g., social work with poor people 362.553, housing allocation to relieve discrimination 363.55. If in doubt, prefer 361.

**362–363 vs. 364.1****Specific social problems and services vs. Criminal offenses**

Use 362–363 for a human activity considered as a social problem, but use 364.1 for the activity treated as a crime, e.g., drug addiction as a social problem 362.29, but illegal use of drugs 364.177; suicide as a social problem 362.28, but suicide treated as a crime 364.1522. If in doubt, prefer 362–363.

**362.1–.4 and 614.4–.5****People with illnesses and disabilities and Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease**

Use 362.1 and 362.4 for works on the social provision of services to people with physical illnesses or disabilities. Use 614.4–.5 for works on preventive measures, regardless of whether the emphasis is medical or social, e.g., social provision of immunization services and works on the medical aspects of immunization 614.47. Use 614.4–.5 for public measures strictly limited to preventive ones, e.g., fluoridation and programs advising people how to avoid cavities 614.5996; but programs to identify and treat people with cavities 362.19767. If in doubt, prefer 362.1.

Use 362.2 for works about the incidence and prevention of mental illness, mental illness as a social problem, and social provision of services to people with mental illness.

Use 614.4–.5 for studies of epidemics and the incidence of physical disease (including mental retardation and physical disabilities) when treated solely from the medical standpoint. Use 362.1 and 362.3–.4 for works emphasizing diseases as social problems. If in doubt, prefer 614.4–.5.

**362.1–.4 vs. 610****Biographies and case histories of people with illnesses and disabilities, and biographies of medical personnel**

Use 362.1–.4, plus notation 092 from Table 1, for biographies and memoirs of people who are dying and people with illnesses and disabilities if the works lack any other disciplinary focus, since such works typically illustrate the way society addresses itself to fundamental health problems and their solution. Use 001–999 for works that focus on a specific discipline, e.g., a work offering guidance in the Christian life with respect to health misfortunes 248.86, Christian meditations in times of illness 242.4. Use 362.1–.4, without adding notation 092 from Table 1, for studies of individual cases designed for the use of researchers, practitioners, and students in the social services, e.g., studies of services to patients with heart disease 362.19612. Use 616–618, plus notation 09 Case histories from the table under 616.1–.9, for studies of patients describing their illnesses in medical terms rather than their lives in social terms, e.g., case studies of heart disease 616.1209. If in doubt, prefer 362; however, prefer 616.8909, 616.890092, and similar numbers for psychiatric disorders (subdivisions of 616.852, 616.858, 616.89, 618.76), since the consideration of external circumstances is generally subordinated to the discussion of the state of mind of the patient.

Use 610 for most biographies of medical personnel, but use 362 for works on public health doctors or nurses emphasizing their influence on public health services and awareness, e.g., a biography of a doctor noted chiefly for promoting nursing homes 362.16092.

**363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600****Control of technology**

Use 363, particularly 363.1 (safety) and 363.7 (environment), for works on control of technology addressing what must be done, regulating how it is to be done, inspecting to see whether or not it has been done, and investigating when it was not done. Use 600 only for works dealing with the technological procedures for carrying out a given operation. Use 363 for institutional breakdown (who let it break), but use 600 for machinery breakdown (finding out what broke).

Use 363 if the author or publishing agency is interested in social service and social need, 304.2 if interested in human ecology, 333.7 if interested in economics, 579 or 580–590 if interested in how organisms survive, 620–690 if interested in how to make things, 628.5 if interested in physical techniques for controlling pollution, 632–635 if interested in how crops survive.

Use 363 for comprehensive works and works oriented toward problems and their solution. Use 302–307 for works giving significant consideration to the social dynamics of the problem, use 333.7 for resource-oriented material, and use 600 for works emphasizing technology.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 363, other numbers in 300, 570–590, 600. Especially prefer numbers in 300 for most works produced by commercial publishers and environmental or safety advocacy groups.

*See also discussion at 300 vs. 600; also at 301–307 vs. 361–365.*

**363 vs. 344.02–.05, 353–354****Other social problems and services vs. Law and public administration**

Use 363 for the work of agencies by which the government carries out the detailed intent of the law in matters of population, safety, the environment, and provision of basic necessities, including most discussion of policy and most detailed procedures for enforcing law, policy, or regulation. Use 344.02–.05 for the law itself, draft laws, and enforcement of the law in courts with respect to these fields. Use 353–354 for the internal administration of agencies concerned with these fields, including their administrative annual reports. If in doubt, prefer 363.

**Law enforcement**

Use 363.23 for law enforcement by the police, but use 353–354 for enforcement of the law by government agencies in the sense of seeing that the requirements of the law are being met, e.g., activities of a department of education to ensure that the requirements of the law are being met in schools 353.8. However, use 340 for laws governing how such enforcement should be carried out, e.g., the law governing what measures police may use in enforcing the law 344.0523 (or 345.052 if the work treats matters of criminal investigation). If in doubt, prefer 363.23.

Class enforcement of the law through the courts in 342–347, plus notation 0269 from table under 342–347 where appropriate, e.g., court procedure that promotes the enforcement of tax law 343.040269.

**363.1****Public safety programs**

The meaning and scope of the word “safety” may vary. Use 363 if the scope covers most of the social services, or even 361 if sufficient 362 material is included. Use 363.2 if “safety” is used narrowly to comprise only the work of the police and fire departments.

**Priority of safety**

Use 363.1 or 363.3, rather than numbers elsewhere in 300, for those aspects of safety that society must deal with through investigations and programs (the topics in the add table at 362–363), e.g., railroad safety 363.122 (*not* 385.0289). However, use 353.9 for the public administration of safety.

**363.1 vs. 600****Safety regulations**

Use 363.1, plus subdivision 6 from the table under 362–363 if appropriate, for manuals written by or for safety agencies that discuss technical details useful as background for regulation and inspection of various operations while still focusing primarily on safety services. Use the 600 number for the technology involved for safety regulations that spell out operating and construction techniques in explicit detail, even if the regulations are in the form of an officially promulgated regulation by a safety authority. If in doubt, prefer 363.1.

**363.31 vs. 303.376, 791.4****Censorship**

Use 363.31 for censorship of movies and programs after being released or aired, e.g., use of v-chips by parents. Use 303.376 for theories of censorship and sociological studies of censorship of movies, radio, and television. Use 791.4 for censorship of films and programs as they are being produced, e.g., censorship through editing. If in doubt, prefer 363.31.

**363.5, 363.6, 363.8 vs. 338****Housing, public utilities, and food supply vs. Production**

363.5, 363.6, and 363.8 deal with the problems of providing the basic necessities of life, and each has economic implications. Use 363.5, 363.6, or 363.8 for social factors affecting the availability of housing, water, fuel and food, or for social measures to ensure an adequate supply. Use 338 for the effect of these topics on the economic aspects of society, or the impact of economic conditions on the availability of housing, water, fuel, or food. For example, use 363.81 for a study of the mismatch between the expected growth of the food supply and of the population, but use 338.19 for a study of the effect of a drop in farm prices on the food supply. If in doubt, prefer 363.5, 363.6, or 363.8.

**363.5 vs. 307.336, 307.34****Housing**

Use 363.5 for works on housing problems and solutions addressed specifically to housing. Use 307.336 for the descriptive analysis of housing patterns that treats problems in

the context of the sociology of communities. Use 307.34 for works addressing housing problems in the context of restructuring whole communities. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 363.5, 307.34, 307.336.

### **363.5 vs. 643.1**

#### **Housing vs. Houses**

Use 363.5 for interdisciplinary works on housing that treat the social aspects of lodging, as the term “housing” normally refers to the provision of lodging considered in the abstract. Use 643.1 for interdisciplinary works on houses and their use and for the home economics aspects of either housing or houses, as the term “houses” normally refers to the buildings considered as physical objects. If in doubt, prefer 363.5.

### **363.61**

#### **Water reports**

Use 363.61 for reports concentrating on the problem of treating and delivering water to consumers and for interdisciplinary reports on water supply. Use 333.91 for water supply reports concentrating on water used, or needed in the future; 363.7284 for reports concentrating on assuring that wastewaters are properly treated; 363.739472 for reports concentrating on protection of natural waters; and 553.7 for reports concentrating on the supply of water on hand. If in doubt, prefer 363.61.

Use 333.9116 for general works on monitoring to protect water quality; 553.7, plus notation 1–9 from Table 2 where appropriate, for reports that describe the present chemical and biological status of available water but do not focus on a specific objective, e.g., a base-line study of the quality of French surface waters 553.780944; 363.61 for water quality monitoring reports as tools for assuring compliance with water supply standards; 363.739463 for such reports as tools for assuring compliance with wastewater pollution standards; 628.16 for reports as tools for determining plant loads and technical difficulties in water treatment; and 628.3 for reports as tools for checking the effectiveness of sewage treatment works.

### **363.73 vs. 571.95, 577.27**

#### **Pollution vs. Toxicology vs. Effects of humankind on ecology**

Use 363.7363 or the number for the specific pollutant or environment in 363.738–.739, plus notation 63 from the table under 362–363, for pollution studies in which the growth and decline of biological indicator species is merely used to measure the extent and kind of pollution, and interpreted to suggest the need for, or sufficiency of, remedial measures, e.g., acid rain monitoring by use of indicator species 363.738663.

Use 571.95 for the pathological conditions caused by pollution and other agents in tissues of organisms. Use 577.27 or the number for the specific ecological environment (biome) in 577.3–.7, plus notation 27 derived from instructions under 577.3–.6 or notation 27 derived from instructions under 577.76–.79, for the more generalized effects of substances upon the community of organisms, e.g., the reduction of species counts (biodiversity) and the general health and vigor of surviving species.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 363.73, 571.95, 577.27.

*See also discussion at 333.7–.9 vs. 363.1, 363.73, 577.*

**363.8 vs. 613.2, 641.3****Food supply vs. Dietetics vs. Food**

Use 363.8 for works on meeting the food supply needs of society in general and of various social groups and for interdisciplinary works on nutrition. Use 613.2 for works emphasizing how to help individuals meet dietary requirements and maintain optimal balanced intake without gaining or losing weight, for material to help dietitians in planning diets for individuals, and for comprehensive works on personal aspects of nutrition. Use 641.3 for works emphasizing the food itself and for interdisciplinary works on food. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 363.8, 641.3, 613.2.

**371 vs. 353.8, 371.2, 379****School administration and policy**

Use 371 for the basic operations and activities of schools and school systems. Use 353.8 only for administration of national and state or provincial departments of education that regulate and support local school systems. Use 371.2 for comprehensive works on school (or school-system) administration and for works covering both 371.2 and 353.8. Use 371.201–.207 and numbers to which reference is made under 371.201–.207 for specific topics in plant and system administration.

Use 379 for policy and debate on major policy issues in education, e.g., discussion of the role of government. Subdivisions are provided in 379 only for general works on support and control of public education, and for a limited selection of major, controversial issues in education. Use 370–378 for public policy and debate concerning all other issues in education (that is, all issues not specifically named in 379).

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 371, 371.2, 379, 353.8.

**371.01–.8 vs. 372–374, 378****Specific levels and topics of education**

Use 371.01–.8 for specific topics relating to two or more levels of education, e.g., to primary and secondary education, to secondary and higher education. Use 372–374 and 378 for any or all topics related to a specific level of education. There is specific provision at each level for each specific topic in 371.01–.8, usually in subdivision 1 under each level, e.g., in 372.1. If in doubt about whether a work relates to only one level, or to two or more levels, prefer 371.01–.8.

**371.262 vs. 371.264****Standardized tests vs. Academic prognosis and placement**

Use 371.262 for works that focus on particular tests and their use. Use 371.264 for general discussions of the use of results of standardized tests in prognosis and placement. Use 371.26 for works giving substantial treatment to both the tests in general and to their use in prognosis and placement. If in doubt, prefer 371.262.

**372.24 and 373.23****Specific levels of primary and secondary education**

The following tables show some common combinations of grades or sublevels used in primary and secondary education. Use the pattern shown in the first table when individ-

ual grades are discussed. That table reflects the 3–3–3–3 plan used in the schedule. The other tables after the first show how other combinations of levels fit into the schedule.

Grades	Number
1–3 (Lower primary level)	372.241
4–6 (Intermediate primary level)	372.242
7–9 (Lower secondary level)	373.236
10–12 (Upper secondary level)	373.238

The 6–6 pattern:

Grades	Number
1–6 (Primary school)	372
7–12 (Secondary school)	373

The 8–4 pattern:

Grades	Number
1–8 (Primary school)	372
9–12 (Secondary school)	373

The 4–4–4 pattern:

Grades	Number
1–4 (Primary school)	372
5–8 (Lower secondary school)	373.236
9–12 (Secondary school)	373

Use the higher level for other combinations of grades unless the majority of the grades are at the lower level, e.g., a primary school covering kindergarten through second grade 372.241. Use 371 for schools extending from first to ninth grade or beyond.

These guidelines apply only to discussion of specific combinations of grades in general, e.g., junior high schools (lower level secondary schools) in the United States 373.2360973. Use the geographic span under the general number for primary or secondary education (or 371.009) for specific schools, e.g., a specific junior high school in Atlanta, Georgia 373.758231.

The source of information for comparison of international levels of education is *International Standard Classification of Education: ISCED 1997* (UNESCO 1997).

### 378.4–.9 vs. 355.00711

#### College level military schools

Use 378.4–.9 (378 plus area notation of the place where it is found) for a college level military school that is not an official training academy, that is, those whose students (*except* in wartime) usually enter civilian occupations, e.g., Virginia Military Institute (Lexington, Virginia) 378.755853, The Citadel (Charleston, South Carolina) 378.757915.

Use 355.00711 plus the area notation of the country it serves for an official military service academy (or a similar number for an academy of a specific service), e.g., the Royal Military Academy (Sandhurst, England) 355.0071141, the United States Naval Academy (Annapolis, Maryland) 359.0071173.

If in doubt, prefer 378.4–.9.

380

## Commerce, communications, transportation

Since 380 is part of 330, the table of preference under 330 also applies to subjects in 380. Commerce, communications and transportation take the same position in that table as production. Therefore, use 331.1251388 for a work on the labor market in transportation, but use 388.049 for a work on production economics of transportation.

### Add table

09 vs. 065

History and geographic treatment vs. Business enterprises

Use notation 09 for the system (facilities, activities, services) maintained by the company in a specific area, e.g., railroad transportation provided by the Union Pacific Railroad 385.0978. For international companies, use notation 09 only when coverage is limited to a specific area, e.g., comprehensive works on air transportation provided by United Airlines 387.7, air transportation in the United States provided by United Airlines 387.70973.

Use notation 065 for the corporate history of the company, e.g., the corporate history of the Union Pacific Railroad 385.06578. For international companies, use the area number for the country that is its home base, e.g., United Airlines 387.706573.

If in doubt, prefer 09.

## 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4

### Radio, television, and motion pictures

Use 384.54, 384.55, and 384.8 for interdisciplinary works and for the various aspects of presenting a program to the general public, e.g., selecting the correct day and time to broadcast a television variety show 384.5531. Use 791.4 for the various aspects of producing an individual program, e.g., arranging the various acts of a television variety show 791.450232. If in doubt between 384 and 791.4, prefer 384.

Class the history of a radio, television, or motion picture company as follows:

1. Use 384, plus notation 09 from Table 1, for a general history of the enterprise, e.g., a history of NBC (National Broadcasting Company) Television Network 384.5540973, and the history of the system (facilities, activities, services) maintained by the enterprise, e.g., stations broadcasting NBC television programs 384.554530973.
2. Use 384, plus notation 065 from the add table under 380, for the corporate history of the enterprise, e.g., the corporate history of the NBC Television Network 384.55406573.
3. Use 791.4, plus notation 09 from Table 1, for the history and critical appraisal of the products of the enterprise, e.g., the history of the television programs provided by NBC 791.450973.

**391 vs. 646.3, 746.92****Costume vs. Clothing**

Use 391 for clothing customs, such as what was worn, what is now fashionable, national costumes, e.g., Edwardian fashion 391.0094109041, Lithuanian national costumes 391.0094793. Use 646.3 for home economics aspects of clothing, such as how to dress on a limited budget, select the best quality clothing, dress correctly for the business world. Use 746.92 for artistic aspects of clothing, such as clothing considered as a product of the textile arts, fashion design. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 391, 746.92, 646.3.

The source of information about kinds of costume and clothing is *The Fairchild Dictionary of Fashion*, 3rd ed. (New York: Fairchild Publications, 2003).

**398.2****Folk literature**

Literary collections cannot be specified for folk literature in 398.2. Disregard this aspect in classifying, and use the most specific number available.

Use notation 09 from Table 1 to distinguish literary criticism of collections of tales and lore, e.g., criticism of ghost stories 398.2509, criticism of French ghost stories 398.209440509. However, do not add notation 09 for individual tales or lore, e.g., literary criticism of a ghost story from France 398.2094405.

**398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299****Myths and legends**

Use 398.2 for myths or mythology presented in terms of cultural entertainment or, especially, as representative of the early literary expression of a society, even if they are populated by gods and goddesses. Use 201.3 and similar numbers elsewhere in 200 for mythology presented from a strictly theological point of view or presented as an embodiment of the religion of a people. For example, use 398.2 for Greco-Roman myths retold for a juvenile audience; but use 294.382325 for Jataka tales illustrating the character of the Buddha.

Use 398.2 for mythology having a nonreligious basis that deals with beliefs and stories that can be referred to as superstitions, legends, fairy tales, etc., where the religious content or interest is not apparent. Use 201.3 and similar numbers elsewhere in 200 for mythology having a religious basis that deals with the most basic beliefs of people and with religious beliefs and practices.

Class specific myths and legends presented as examples of a people's religion with the subject in religion, e.g., legends of Jesus' coming to Britain 232.9.

Use 398.2 for interdisciplinary works on mythology, since this number includes folk narratives with a broader focus than religion alone. If in doubt, prefer 398.2.

**398.2 vs. 398.3–4****Folk literature**

Use 398.2 for a folk tale on a specific subject and literary criticism of that tale. Use 398.3–4 for comprehensive works on the history and criticism of the tale, e.g., tales of

witches and wizards 398.21, a treatise on why in the tales witches are usually evil and wizards are usually good 398.45. If in doubt, prefer 398.2.

#### **401.43 vs. 306.44, 401.45, 401.9, 412, 415**

##### **Meaning**

Use 401.43 for works on semantics dealing with meaning in language, covering topics such as synonymy, ambiguity, and semantic truth (metalinguistic truth). Semantics is particularly concerned with the underlying logical structure of natural language, i.e., what elements are necessary beyond correct grammar for statements to make sense. Use 412 for works on etymology that study the history of the meanings of individual words. Use 415 for works on grammar that are concerned with meaning only in relation to morphology and syntax. If in doubt, prefer 401.43.

Use 401.45 for interdisciplinary works on linguistic pragmatics. Use 306.44 for works on the sociology of language concerned with meaning as affected by sociocultural context. Use 306.44 also for works on linguistic pragmatics that deal with language in its sociocultural context, but use 401.9 for works on pragmatics that focus on the individual psychological context. If in doubt, prefer 401.45.

#### **407.1, T1—071 vs. 401.93, T4—019, 410.71, 418.0071, T4—80071**

##### **Education in language vs. Language acquisition**

Use 407.1 for comprehensive works on the study and teaching of both language and literature. Use 410.71 for works on the study and teaching of linguistics. Use 418.0071 for works on how to study or teach language.

Use notation for the specific language, plus notation 071 from Table 1 (which is incorporated in Table 4), for works on studying and teaching the linguistics of that language and comprehensive works on studying and teaching both the language and its literature, e.g., comprehensive works on studying and teaching French language and literature 440.71. Use notation 80071 from Table 4 for works on how to study or teach a specific language, e.g., how to teach basic French 448.0071. If in doubt, prefer T1—071.

Use 401.93 for works on the psychology of learning language informally, as a child learns from its parents. Use T4—019 for the psychology of learning a specific language informally. Use 418.0071, or T4—80071 for a specific language, for the psychology of formal study and teaching of language. Use 401.93, or T4—019 for a specific language, for comprehensive works on the psychology of learning language both formally and informally. If in doubt, prefer 401.93 or T4—019.

## **410**

### **Linguistics**

#### **Prescriptive linguistics**

Use 410, 411–417, 419, and 420–490, plus notation 1–7 from Table 4 for works on nonprescriptive approaches to linguistics (e.g., descriptive and theoretical linguistics), which are concerned with describing or explaining language usage as it does or did exist, without regard to an ideal of correct usage. Use 418 and 419–490, plus notation 8 from Table 4 for works on prescriptive approaches, which are concerned with promoting standard or correct usage of language, i.e., trying to learn to speak or write like educated native users of a standard form of a language. For example, use 415 and notation 5 from Table 4 for descriptive works about grammar, but use 418 and notation 82 from Table 4

for prescriptive works about grammar, e.g., descriptive works on French grammar 445, prescriptive works on French grammar 448.2. However, use 413 and notation 3 from Table 4 for dictionaries, regardless of whether they are prescriptive or descriptive, e.g., French dictionaries 443.

Use the number for nonprescriptive approaches for comprehensive works containing both nonprescriptive and prescriptive linguistics, e.g., a collection containing both descriptive and prescriptive papers about grammar in general or the grammar of many different languages 415. If in doubt, prefer the number for nonprescriptive approaches.

### **Contrastive linguistics**

Use 410 or other numbers not limited to applied linguistics for works of contrastive linguistics that are purely descriptive or theoretical, or a combination of applied and nonapplied linguistics. Use 418 and notation 8 from Table 4 for works of contrastive linguistics that focus on finding ways to prevent errors caused by interference or negative transfers from a first language in learning a second language or in translating into a second language. If in doubt, prefer the number not limited to applied linguistics.

### **Historical linguistics**

Use 417.7 for works on general historical (diachronic) linguistics. Use notation 09 from Table 1 for general historical linguistics of a specific language, or for historical linguistics of a specific topic, if the work gives a history, but not if the work merely discusses the processes of change in a general way. For example, use 415 for a general description of grammatical change, 425.09 for a history of grammatical changes in the English language, and 420.9 for a history of all kinds of changes in the English language. Although no provision comparable to 417.7 exists for individual languages in Table 4, notation 7 is provided under specific languages for works that focus on the distinctive characteristics of specific early forms of the language, e.g., 427.02 Middle English.

### **Comparative linguistics**

Class a comparison of two languages with the language requiring local emphasis (usually the language that is less common in the particular setting). For example, libraries in English-speaking countries will use 495.6 for a work comparing English and Japanese, but libraries in Japan will use 420. If no emphasis is required, class the work with the language coming later in Table 6.

Class a comparison of three or more languages in the most specific number that will contain them all; e.g., use 430 for a comparison of Dutch, German, and English, since all are Germanic languages; use 491.6 for a comparison of Gaelic, Welsh, and Breton, since all are Celtic languages.

Use 410 if there is no number that will contain all the languages, e.g., a comparison of French, Hebrew, and Japanese.

Use the same criteria for comparisons of just one feature of various languages, but do not add notation from Table 4 to the number for language families unless there are special instructions to do so. For example, libraries in English-speaking countries will use 495.65 for a comparison of English and Japanese grammar, but libraries in Japan will use 425. Use 415 for a comparison of French, Hebrew, and Russian grammar; use 430.045 for a comparison of Dutch, German, and English grammar (because at 430.04 there are instructions to add); but use 491.6 for a comparison of Gaelic, Welsh, and Breton grammar.

*See also discussion at 407.1, T1—071 vs. 401.93, T4—019, 410.71, 418.0071, T4—80071.*

## 420–490

### Specific languages

#### Dialects

Sources may differ as to whether a particular tongue is a language or a dialect. Treat a tongue as a dialect if it is shown as such in the Dewey Decimal Classification even if it is treated as a language in the work being classified, and vice versa.

#### Language vs. subject

Class examples and collections of “text” whose purpose is to display and study a language with the language, even if limited to a specific subject, e.g., a grammar of scientific English 425. Class language analysis of a specific work with the number for the work. If in doubt, prefer the specific subject or work.

## 471–475, 478 vs. 477

### Classical vs. Old, postclassical, Vulgar Latin

The dates of the Classical Age of Latin are 80 B.C. to 130 A.D. (the Ciceronian Age 80 B.C. to 43 B.C., the Golden Age of Augustan literature 43 B.C. to 18 A.D., the Silver Age 18 A.D. to 130 A.D.). Use 471–475 and 478 for formal or literary Latin written at any time after the Classical Age that conforms to the standards of that age, e.g., a linguistic study on Latin manuscripts of the monks of Iona. However, use 477 for works on Vulgar Latin, on Old Latin (80 B.C. or earlier), or on postclassical Latin. The phrase “postclassical Latin” refers to the nonclassical or vulgarized Latin used from the death of Juvenal (140 A.D.) until the period of renewed interest in the “pure” Latin of the Classical Age in the 11th and 12th centuries, and from the 14th century onward. If in doubt, prefer 471–475 and 478.

## 500 vs. 001

### Natural sciences and mathematics vs. Knowledge

Use 500 for works about “science” that clearly imply emphasis on the natural sciences and mathematics. Use 001 for works that use the word “science” without implying emphasis on “natural science,” for example, works that also cover the social sciences and the analytical aspects of other disciplines. Use 001.2 Scholarship and learning when the word “science” is used to cover disciplines outside 500. Use 001.4 Research rather than 507.2 for works on scientific method and scientific research with no clear emphasis on “natural science.” However, use 509 for “history of science,” as that term normally relates to the natural sciences and mathematics. If in doubt, prefer 500.

## 510

### Mathematics

#### Primary and secondary school topics

Use the following numbers for the mathematical topics taught in primary and secondary schools:

Arithmetic	513
------------	-----

Algebra	512.9
Geometry	516.2
Trigonometry	516.24

Use caution, however, when classifying works with “precalculus” in the title. Use 510 for works that cover three or more of algebra, arithmetic, elementary calculus, geometry and trigonometry. Use 512 for works that predominantly cover algebra, or cover algebra and arithmetic. Use 515 for works that predominantly cover elementary calculus. If in doubt, prefer 510.

### **Combination of topics**

Use the following instructions when classing in 512.1 Algebra combined with other branches of mathematics, 513.1 Arithmetic combined with other branches of mathematics, and 515.1 Analysis and calculus combined with other branches of mathematics and when using “Class here linear algebra combined with analytic geometry” at 512.5 Linear algebra:

1. Use these numbers for works that deal basically with one subject but have some information on another subject either added at the end of the work or interspersed throughout it. For example, use 512.12 Algebra and Euclidean geometry for a textbook with ten chapters on algebra and two on Euclidean geometry.
2. Use these numbers only for works that are predominantly about the branch first named. For example, use 512.13 only for works about algebra with some trigonometry added; use 516.24 for works about trigonometry with some algebra added.

### **510, T1—0151 vs. 003, T1—011**

#### **Systems**

Use 510 for works about purely mathematical systems, e.g., systems of equations. Careful examination may be required to determine whether a work is limited to purely mathematical systems, because the same or similar terms may be applied to both mathematical systems and mathematical descriptions of real-world systems; for example, a work on dynamical systems may discuss either mathematics (515.39) or real-world systems (003.85).

Use 003 for works on mathematics applied to real-world systems, even though they are highly mathematical, and even though a significant part is organized according to mathematical concepts. Use 003 if the work makes clear that the mathematics is intended as background for systems theory, and the systems part of the work will typically be organized according to specific applications, types of systems, or systems concepts such as control, stability, input-output, feedback, observability, or state estimation.

If in doubt, prefer 510.

Use notation 011 from Table 1 for works that clearly stress systems, modeling, forecasting, or other topics named in 003. Use notation 0151 from Table 1 for works lacking such stress. If in doubt, prefer T1—0151.

*See also discussion at 519.5, T1—015195 vs. 001.422, T1—0727.*

**510, T1—0151 vs. 004—006, T1—0285****Mathematics and computer applications**

Use 510 plus notation 0285 from Table 1 for the use or application of computers in mathematics, e.g., computer programs used for the numerical solution of ordinary differential equations 518.63028553. Use 004—006 plus notation 0151 from Table 1 for mathematics applied to computers, e.g., recursive functions used to explain how computers work 004.0151135. If in doubt, prefer 510 plus notation 0285 from Table 1.

If the application is in a third discipline, use notation 0285 from Table 1 for works that involve both the use of computers and the use of mathematics, e.g., a computer program for solving structural engineering calculations 624.1028553.

**519.5, T1—015195 vs. 001.422, T1—0727****Statistics**

The subject of statistics can be divided into three parts:

1. How to obtain and arrange statistical data
2. How to manipulate the data by mathematical means to produce information regarding the topic being examined
3. How to interpret the statistical results

Use 519.5, or the number in 001–999 for the subject, plus notation 015195 from Table 1, for works containing only 2, or 2 with 1 or 3 or both as incidental information. Use 001.422, or the number in 001–999 for the subject, plus notation 0727 from Table 1, for works giving equal treatment to 1, 2, and 3, or containing information about only 1 or 3 or both 1 and 3.

In many disciplines a word derived from the discipline name combined with -metrics or -statistics is used for statistical work, e.g., sociometrics, econometrics, biometrics, biostatistics. Commonly works on these subjects concentrate on 2 from the above list, with secondary treatment of 3 or 1 or both. Use the number in 001–999 for the subject plus notation 015195 from Table 1 for these works. Use the number in 001–999 for the subject plus notation 0727 from Table 1 for works of broader treatment, emphasizing 1 or 3 or both 1 and 3.

If in doubt, prefer 519.5 or T1—015195.

*See also discussion at 510, T1—0151 vs. 003, T1—011.*

**520 vs. 500.5, 523.1, 530.1****Outer space**

Use 520 for popular works on astronomy that use the terms “space” and “outer space” while discussing the various interesting astronomical bodies and phenomena of the universe, and use 523.1 for works that use the terms as synonymous with the universe treated as a single unit.

Use 520 for works on exploring space or outer space that emphasize astronomical findings (or use a specific number in 523 if the work is limited to specific bodies, e.g., the solar system 523.2).

Use 500.5 for a work on space sciences in general that has no particular reference to astronomical bodies. Use 530.1, where an including note mentions space, if the work refers simply to space with nothing in it.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 520, 523.1, 530.1, 500.5.

*See also discussion at 629.43, 629.45 vs. 559.9, 919.904, 910.919.*

### **520 vs. 523.1, 523.112, 523.8**

#### **Astronomy and allied sciences vs. The universe, galaxies, quasars vs. Galaxies vs. Stars**

Use 520 for works describing the universe in its several distinct components, e.g., as individual planets, stars, galaxies. Use 523.1 for works treating the universe as a single unit. If in doubt, prefer 520.

#### **Stars and galaxies**

Use 523.8 for comprehensive works on stars and galaxies when they are treated as individual astronomical bodies. However, use 523.112 when the work considers stars primarily as components of galaxies. Use 523.1 if the work considers galaxies and stars primarily in the context of cosmological theories, with little discussion of individual stars or galaxies. Use 520 for works that discuss other astronomical bodies, e.g., planets and comets, as well as stars and galaxies.

If in doubt between 523.8 and 523.112, prefer 523.8.

### **523 vs. 550**

#### **Earth sciences in extraterrestrial worlds**

Use 523 for phenomena of celestial bodies when the celestial body has no distinct lithosphere, since in such cases hydrosphere and meteorology are moot concepts, and thus the phenomena are not directly comparable to terrestrial phenomena. Use 559.9 and notation 0999 from Table 1 in 551–553 for phenomena of celestial bodies that have distinct lithospheres when the phenomena are directly comparable to terrestrial phenomena. For example, use 551.5099923 for the atmosphere of Mars (which has a lithosphere), but use 523.86 for the atmosphere of stars (which do not); use 523.45 for the red spot of Jupiter (a planet without a distinct lithosphere). If in doubt, prefer 523.

### **530.416 vs. 539.75**

#### **Responsive behavior and energy phenomena vs. Nuclear activities and interactions**

Use 530.416 for works that study topics in responsive behavior, energy phenomena, nuclear activities, nuclear interactions in the context of the condensed (solid and liquid) state, i.e., in answer to the question, what is taking place in condensed matter that makes it behave the way it does. Use 539.75 for works that study these topics in the abstract, or in the context of nuclear structure, i.e., in answer to the question, what makes the atom and its particles behave the way they do. If in doubt, prefer 530.416.

### **530.475 vs. 530.12, 531.16**

#### **Brownian motion and particle mechanics**

Use 530.475 (or the similar numbers 530.415, 530.425, 530.435) for treatment of particles in diffusion within various states of matter. Use 530.12 for comprehensive works

on particle mechanics. Particle mechanics is a subject that exists in both classical and quantum physics, but is far more basic to the study of quantum physics, where the quanta can be considered particles. Use 531.16 only if the emphasis is clearly on classical mechanics. Use other numbers in modern physics if appropriate, e.g., orbits of subatomic particles 539.725. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 530.475, 530.12, 531.16.

Use 530.475 for interdisciplinary works on Brownian motion, which usually refers to the random motion of microscopic particles. However, class with the subject the extension by analogy of the concept to a variety of similar random movements, e.g., of prices, of biological populations, of instrumental recordings.

Use 530.425 for works on Brownian motion with an emphasis (often unstated) on such motion in fluids.

#### 541 vs. 546

##### **Physical chemistry of specific chemicals**

Use a subdivision of 546 for physical chemistry of a specific element or compound; however, use a subdivision of 541 when one or two examples drawn from large groupings like metals (546.3) or nonmetals (546.7) are used primarily to study or explain a specific topic in physical chemistry, e.g., hydrogen-ion concentration 541.3728 (*not* 546.2).

If in doubt, prefer 541.

#### 548 vs. 530.41

##### **Crystallography vs. Solid-state physics**

Use 548 for works on crystals and crystallography when these terms are used to refer to discrete objects and abstract lattice patterns. Use 530.41 for works on crystallography and the crystalline state in their broad senses, i.e., when the terms are used to cover atomic arrangement in metals, ceramics, amorphous materials, or polymers. Use 530.41 as the comprehensive number. If in doubt, prefer 548 for works clearly emphasizing ordinary crystals.

#### 549 vs. 546

##### **Mineralogy vs. Inorganic chemistry**

Use 549 numbers for topics of physical and theoretical chemistry pertaining to the structure and behavior of homogeneous crystalline solids. Use 546 numbers for comprehensive works on the chemistry and mineralogy of specific chemical types. If in doubt, prefer 549.

#### 549 vs. 548

##### **Mineralogy vs. Crystallography**

Use 549 for the crystallography of specific minerals unless the minerals are used to study or explain a topic in 548, e.g., quartz, feldspar, and related crystals 549.68, but a study of isomorphism using quartz, feldspar, and related crystals 548.3. If in doubt, prefer 549.

**550 vs. 910****Earth sciences vs. Geography and travel**

Geophysics (550) is the analysis of the structure of the earth and the forces shaping it; physical geography (910.02) is the description of the resulting landscape. Use the number for a specific force or process in 551 for descriptions of the results of the specific force or process, e.g., earthquakes in Myanmar 551.2209591. Use the number for a specific land form in 551.41–.45 for the operation of all forces and processes that combined to create a specific topographic land form, e.g., formation of mountains in Myanmar 551.43209591. Use 554–559 for the operation of all the forces and processes taken as a whole in a specific area, especially if the work emphasizes solid geology, e.g., geophysical processes operating in Myanmar or the geology of Myanmar 555.91. However, use 910.02 or the specific area number in 913–919, plus notation 02 from the table at 913–919, when a work treats the geographic landscape with only minor consideration of geophysical processes, e.g., graphical description of surface features in Myanmar 915.9102. If in doubt, prefer 550.

Use 910 or the specific area number in 913–919, plus notation 04 from the table at 913–919, for descriptions of surface features for travelers. Such descriptions usually cover resort accommodations and the ambience as well as geographic features, e.g., contemporary tourist beaches in Myanmar 915.91045.

**551.302–.307 vs. 551.35****Erosion and weathering, sediments and sedimentation, soil formation, mass movement vs. Geologic work of water**

Use 551.302–.304 for works giving due coverage to the work of wind, glaciers, or frost, even if agents other than water take up only a small part of the text, since water is by far the most important agent in the erosion, transport, and deposit of geologic materials. Use 551.352–.354 only for works limited to the work of water or to materials transported by water.

Use 551.305 for the work of water in soil formation and 551.307 for the work of water in mass movement. Water is also the most important agent in these processes, but it almost always acts in conjunction with other agents to produce the processes, e.g., action of dissolved chemicals, temperature changes, or earthquake vibrations.

**551.5 vs. 551.6****Meteorology vs. Climatology and weather**

Meteorology analyzes and describes the properties and phenomena of the atmosphere, and thus explains climate and weather. Meteorology is also the comprehensive subject, encompassing consideration of climatology and weather. Use 551.5 for works called “climatology,” “climate and weather,” or simply “climate” or “weather,” if they cover topics in meteorology. Use 551.6 only when the words are limited to four senses:

1. The description of phenomena of the atmosphere taken as a whole, weather usually being the short-range description, and climate the long-range description
2. The prediction of weather, climate, or specific meteorological phenomena, that is, weather forecasting and forecasts (551.63–.65)
3. The study of climate or meteorology in small areas, that is, microclimatology or micrometeorology (551.66)

4. The attempt to modify weather or any specific meteorological phenomena (551.68), which is actually a technology

Use 551.5 numbers for all other aspects, including description (weather reports) of specific phenomena, regardless of the terms used in the work in hand, e.g., a discussion of the factors that produce weather 551.5, reports of rainfall 551.577, a description of climate types of Asia 551.62095, forecasts of rainfall 551.6477, a forecast of a rainy day in Singapore 551.655957.

If in doubt, prefer 551.5.

### 551.7 vs. 560

#### **Historical geology vs. Paleontology**

Use 551.7 for works on historical geology, which studies the rocks and their strata, using paleontological facts to help date and interpret deposition, movement, and erosion. Use 560 for works on paleontology, which studies life in former geological ages through the interpretation of fossils. Paleontology utilizes the same material as historical geology, i.e., the geologic record, but only as a record of life and the environment in which life evolved. If in doubt, prefer 551.7.

### 571–575 vs. 630

#### **Physiology, anatomy, and pathology of agricultural plants and animals**

Use 571–575 for results of experimental work on basic physiology and pathology that utilize domestic plants and animals as models.

When domestic plants and animals are studied for agricultural purposes, observe the following guidelines:

Use 571.2 and 571.32 and similar numbers in 571.5–8 and 575 for physiology and anatomy of agricultural plants, but use 636.0891–.0892 and similar numbers in 636.1–8 for physiology and anatomy of agricultural animals.

Use 632 for comprehensive works on pathology and diseases of agricultural plants and animals, or for comprehensive works on pathology and diseases of plants. Use 633–635 plus notation 9 from the table under 633–635 for pathology and diseases of specific agricultural plants, e.g., diseases of cotton 633.519. Use 636.0896 for comprehensive works on pathology and diseases of agricultural animals. Use 636.1–.8 for pathology and diseases of specific kinds of agricultural animals plus notation 39 in add table under 636.1–.8 or notation 0896 as instructed in certain entries in the schedule, e.g., diseases of race horses 636.1239, diseases of horses 636.10896.

If in doubt, prefer 571–575.

*See also discussion at 571–573 vs. 610.*

### 571–573 vs. 610

#### **Results of research in biology and medicine**

Use 571–573 for results of physiological and anatomical research with animal models in 571–573. Use 615–618 for results of pharmacological, therapeutic, and pathological research if the medical relevance for humans is either stated or implied. If in doubt, prefer 571–573.

**571.629 vs. 571.29****Cell biology vs. Physiology of microorganisms**

Use 571.629 for works on microorganisms that go into details of internal structures, e.g., membranes and organelles, without also discussing details of reproduction. Use 571.29 for works that discuss only generalities of microorganisms or discuss cell reproduction of microorganisms in addition to their general cell biology. If in doubt, prefer 571.629.

**571.8 vs. 573.6, 575.6****Reproduction, development, and growth vs. Reproduction in animals and in plants**

Use 571.8 for comprehensive works on reproduction, development, and growth, and for works covering reproduction of both animals and plants. Use 571.81 for comprehensive works on reproduction, development, and growth in animals, but not for reproduction alone in animals. Use 571.82 for comprehensive works on reproduction, development, and growth in plants, but not for reproduction alone in plants. Use 573.6 for reproduction in animals as well as reproductive system in animals, and 575.6 for reproduction in plants as well as reproductive organs in plants. If in doubt, prefer 571.8.

**Reproduction in other organisms**

Use 571.829 for reproduction of fungi and algae. Although some fungi and algae have reproductive organs, e.g., mushrooms and seaweeds, most do not, and the organs are poorly developed at best.

Use 571.8429 (*not* 571.829) for reproduction of unicellular microorganisms, and 571.84529 for the sexual reproduction of unicellular microorganisms.

**Vegetative reproduction**

Use 571.89 for comprehensive works on vegetative reproduction. Use 571.829 for vegetative reproduction of microorganisms, and 575.49 for vegetative reproduction of plants.

**573.44 vs. 571.74****Hormones**

Use 573.44 for works that emphasize endocrine hormones or hormones in animals while giving relatively limited treatment to hormones outside the animal kingdom. Use 571.74 only for truly comprehensive works on hormones, e.g., works that give balanced treatment to hormones in plants and microorganisms as well as animals. If in doubt, prefer 573.44.

**576.5 vs. 572.8****Genetics vs. Biochemical genetics**

Use 576.5 for comprehensive works on genetics, for works that emphasize the somatic manifestations of genes, and works that do not emphasize the DNA-based chemical structure of genetic material. Use 572.8 for works on genetics that emphasize the chemical structure and processes, e.g., DNA, RNA, replication, errors in transcription, and crossing over. If in doubt, prefer 576.5.

**576.8 vs. 560****Evolution vs. Paleontology**

Use 576.8 for works that emphasize how paleontological findings are evidence for evolution and works that include significant nonpaleontological evidence. Use 560 for works on the evolution of extinct organisms and works on the history of life that emphasize the description of extinct organisms and ancient environments. If in doubt, prefer 576.8.

**577.3–.7 vs. 578.73–.77****Ecology of specific kinds of environments vs. Biology of specific kinds of environment**

Use 577.3–.7 for works emphasizing either the nature of an environment or the interrelationships among various kinds of organisms found in the environment. Use 578.73–.77 for descriptive accounts of organisms found in a specific kind of area, e.g., plants and animals found in wetlands 578.768; and for comprehensive works on the biology of a specific kind of area, e.g., marine biology 578.77. If in doubt, prefer 577.3–.7.

**577.3–.7 vs. 579–590****Ecology of dominant organisms in a specific kind of environment**

Use 577.3–.7 for the ecology of dominant organisms (usually plants) of a specific ecological environment (biome). For example, use 577.4 (*not* 584.9217) for the role of grass in grasslands. Similarly, use 577.3 for the ecology of specific forest associations, e.g., ecology of coniferous forest associations in Canada 577.30971 (*not* 585.0971 or 585.170971); and use 577.686 (*not* 597.17686) for fishpond ecology.

Use 579 or 580–590 only for works that emphasize the biology of the dominant kind of organism, e.g., the biology of grass in grasslands 584.92 (*not* 584.9217), the biology of fish found in fishponds 597.17636.

If in doubt, prefer 577.3–.7.

**578 vs. 304.2, 508, 910****Natural history vs. Human ecology vs. Geography**

Use 578 for works on nature that concentrate on nonhuman living organisms and their settings. Use 304.2 for works that emphasize the relationship between natural phenomena and human institutions. Use 508 for works on nature that give significant treatment to earth sciences phenomena, e.g., weather, water features, and mountains. Use 910 for works that describe human settlement as well as natural phenomena. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 578, 508, 910, 304.2.

**578.76–.77 vs. 551.46, 551.48****Biology of aquatic environments vs. Oceanography and hydrology**

Use 578.76–.77 for works on aquatic and marine biology, including comprehensive works on biology and ecology of water bodies. These works may include significant consideration of land and sea waters as part of the lives of aquatic organisms, but do not usually include detailed physical description of water bodies. Use 551.46 and 551.48 for works limited to nonliving natural phenomena, and for comprehensive treatment of biological and physical phenomena of water bodies. If in doubt, prefer 578.76–.77.

## 579–590

**Taxonomic nomenclature and sources of information****Taxonomic nomenclature**

The notes below mention several of the commonly recognized taxonomic levels used in classifying organisms. The broadest is kingdom, followed (in order of increasing specificity) by phylum or division, class, order, family, genus, species.

In the schedules for specific kinds of organisms, scientific terms are preferred in headings for taxonomic numbers below the kingdom level. If there are alternative scientific names still in current use, the preferred term is given in the heading, and the alternative names are given in a variant-name note. For example, Mycetozoa, Myxomycetes, Myxomycophyta, Myxomycota are given as variant names for Myxomycotina at 579.52. Most obsolete names have been dropped. If a common name is well established in the literature but does not have a clear-cut corresponding scientific term (or terms), the common name may be used alone, e.g., 598.412–.415 Ducks.

A scientific name given in a class-here note is usually that of a subordinate taxon that comprises all or most of the members of the group in the heading. For example, under 583.986 Paracryphiales, the class-here note gives Paracryphiaceae, the only family in the order.

An illustration of two terminology problems appears at 584.288 Laurales. The main family of this order is Lauraceae, which encompasses ca. 90 percent of the species of the order. The family is therefore given in a class here note, signifying that subdivisions can be added to the number for works on the family because it approximates the whole of the order.

Although commonly known as the laurel family, only a few species of Lauraceae, however, are individually known as laurels, while several plants of other orders are also called laurels. Since it is useful to know where to class comprehensive works on laurels, the including note reads, in part: “Including ... comprehensive works on laurels.” Being listed in an including note means that laurels (even when encompassing all plants called laurels) do not approximate the whole of the more than 3000 species in the order Laurales.

Classes of organisms have up to two including or class-here notes, for classifier convenience. The first note in a pair lists the scientific names, the second the common names.

**Sources of taxonomic information**

Taxonomic schedules usually follow the arrangement accepted in *Encyclopaedia Britannica Online*. Other works that often prove helpful are the Tree of Life web project (tolweb.org), Wikipedia, and Wikispecies.

*See also discussion at 579.24–.25; also at 579.3; also at 583–584; also at 599.*

**579–590 vs. 571–575****Biology of whole organisms vs. Biology of internal processes**

Use 579 or 580–590 for general and external biological phenomena of specific kinds of organisms. Use 571–575, plus notation 1 (for animals) or 2 (for plants and microorganisms) from various add instructions in 571–575, for internal biological processes and structures of specific kinds of organisms.

The distinction between the biology of whole organisms in 579 or 580–590 (the first biology) and the biology of internal processes in 571–575 (the second biology) is based upon the recognition of fundamental differences between the literature of the two biologies. While the distinction between the two is not absolute, there are a number of basic differences:

1. The first biology requires the study of whole organisms or taxonomic groups and their relationships to each other and the environment; the second requires the study of parts of organisms to find out how the various processes work.
2. The first biology is studied primarily in the field, where it usually involves descriptive research; the second is studied primarily in laboratories, where it usually involves experimental research. (Either kind of research, however, can be used in either biology.)
3. In the first biology, topics are usually seen as typical only of the specific kind of organism being studied, e.g., snail shells, reproductive behavior of sticklebacks, weaverbird nests. In the second biology, the process studied in one organism is usually seen as typical of all living organisms (or as typical of a large class of organisms such as animals, vertebrates, or mammals), e.g., cell division, blood circulation, immune reactions.
4. Natural history is at the core of the first biology, and approximates the whole of it; physiology is at the core of the second, and approximates the whole of it.
5. Most of the literature in the first biology is written by specialists named after kinds of organisms, e.g., ornithologists and ichthiologists, while most of the literature on the second biology is written by specialists named after the processes and structures they study, e.g., biochemists and cytologists. The biggest exception is ecology (a study of processes involving whole organisms, counted here in the first biology), where the specialists tend to concentrate on the ecology of different kinds of environments.
6. Finally, the first biology dominates the collections of general and small libraries, while the second is collected much more heavily in academic and research libraries.

If in doubt, prefer 579 or 580–590.

### **579.165 vs. 616.9041**

#### **Harmful organisms vs. Medical microbiology**

Use 579.165 for the biology of pathogenic microorganisms. Use 616.9041 for the study of the microorganisms in relation to human diseases. If in doubt, prefer 579.165.

### **579.24–.25**

#### **Virus classification**

Subdivisions for specific kinds of viruses in 579.24–.25 are based upon *Classification and Nomenclature of Viruses* by the International Committee on Taxonomy and Viruses, 1982.

**579.3****Classification of bacteria**

Subdivisions for specific kinds of bacteria in 579.3 are based upon sections of *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*, 1984–1989. In most cases the sections have names that are English phrases defining exactly what the section contains, e.g., “Anaerobic Gram-Negative Straight, Curved and Helical Rods.” *Bergey's* does use some traditional Latin or Greek names. At 579.39, where it is clear that one of *Bergey's* names (Oxygenic photosynthetic bacteria) corresponds to two traditional names, the traditional names (Cyanobacteria and Prochlorales) are preferred in the heading, and *Bergey's* name is given as a definition.

**Minor kinds of bacteria**

Use 579.32 for bacteria described in sections 1–3, 6–11, 20–25, and 33 of *Bergey's Manual*.

**Actinomycetes and related orders**

Use 579.37 for bacteria described in sections 14–17 and 26–32 of *Bergey's Manual*.

**583–585 vs. 600****Interdisciplinary works on specific kinds of seed plants**

Use 583–585 for works limited to the botany of useful plants, and for works giving significant treatment to species of no particular economic value. For example, use 583.34 for works covering the 300 species of the buttercup family, and 583.9593 for works on peppers that covers all the species of *Capsicum* and other genera that are called peppers. Also use 583–585 when there are two or more uses in technology, or one such use offset by an obvious botanical interest, e.g., 583.65 for oaks because oaks are useful as ornamental trees as well as lumber trees, and 584.288 for laurels because the many wild species of interest to botanists usually outweigh the few species that are well known as ornamentals.

Use numbers in 600 for interdisciplinary works on most kinds of seed plants that have a single dominant use. For example, use 615.321 for medicinal plants, 633.2–.3 for forage plants, 635.9 for ornamental plants (635.933644 for roses), 641.33–.35 for food plants (641.3411 for apples), 674 for lumber plants, and 677 for textile plants (677.21 for cotton).

The interdisciplinary number for most common plants is given in the Relative Index as the number opposite the unindented term. Use 583–585 for interdisciplinary works on plants that are not indexed, unless they belong in categories like those mentioned in the preceding paragraph. If in doubt, prefer 583–585.

**583–584****Classification and common names of angiosperms (flowering plants)**

The subdivisions of angiosperms (flowering plants) in 583–584 are defined by reference to the article “An update of the Angiosperm Phylogeny Group classification for the orders and families of flowering plants: APG III” in *Botanical Journal of the Linnean Society* 161 (2009): 105–121. Only the overall outline from early editions of the Dewey Decimal Classification is retained, in which the eudicots of 583 precede the monocots of 584. Otherwise the sequence of classes is guided by Haston et al., “The Linear An-

giosperm Phylogeny Group (LAPG) III: a linear sequence of the families in APG III“ in *Botanical Journal of the Linnean Society* 161 (2009): 128–131.

Only APG III families with sufficient literary warrant appear in the headings or notes of 583–584, while all APG III family names have been indexed to the appropriate classes. Although non-APG names are no longer mentioned in the schedules, they continue to be indexed, but at relocated numbers, if necessary. As non-APG names are derived from a different system of classification, their fit may be only approximate.

Latin or Greek taxonomic names are given in the heading, while their English language equivalents are given in a class-here note. Other Latin or Greek taxonomic names and their English language equivalents are given in separate including and class-here notes.

Exercise caution in identifying orders and families of flowering plants by common names; many such names are used for plants in several unrelated taxonomic groups. Notes in the schedule linking the common names are not exhaustive.

### 583 vs. 582.13

#### **Angiosperms (Flowering plants) vs. Plants noted for their flowers**

Use 583 for works on the taxonomic group called “flowering plants,” as found in 583–584. This group includes most plants that will be found in a typical vegetable garden. Use 582.13 for works largely limited to nondomesticated plants with attractive flowers. These are the kind of plants that are found in nature, but that might also find a place in flower gardens or flower books. If in doubt, prefer 583.

### 598.824–.88

#### **Families and common names of Oscines (Passeres, songbirds)**

Use 598.8 for songbird families not given in 598.824–.88. Exercise caution in identifying families of songbirds by common names; many such names are used for birds of several different families.

### 599

#### **Classification of mammals**

In addition to the general sources of taxonomic information used throughout 579–590, *Walker’s Mammals of the World*, 1991, is particularly helpful for genera and families.

*See also discussion at 579–590.*

### 599.94 vs. 611

#### **Anthropometry vs. Human anatomy**

Use 599.94 for works emphasizing variations of external features, shapes, and gross bone structure (e.g., the comparison of heavy-boned and thin-boned people, indexes of length and breadth of skeletal features). Use 611 for works emphasizing norms of overall structure, for detailed structure of bones, and for works on all other internal organs and structures. If in doubt, prefer 599.94.

**604.7 vs. 660.2804****Hazardous chemicals**

Use 604.7 for comprehensive consideration of hazardous chemicals that includes handling, transporting, and utilization outside the chemical industry. Use 660.2804 for consideration of hazardous chemicals during chemical engineering. If in doubt, prefer 604.7.

However, use numbers in 660 as comprehensive technology numbers for specific hazardous chemicals, e.g., processing, transportation, utilization of natural gas 665.73.

**610 vs. 616****Medicine and health vs. Diseases**

Use 610 for works containing separate treatment of health, pharmacology, and therapeutics, as well as of diseases. Use 616 for comprehensive works on the diseases listed in 616–618.

Use the table of contents as a guide in deciding whether a work belongs in 610 or 616. Use 610 if it reads like a summary of topics in 610.73–618; use 616 if it reads like a summary of topics in 616.02–.99 or in 616–618. Use 616 also if the whole of medicine is brought to bear on the concept of diseases in a single treatise that discusses group after group of diseases.

If in doubt, prefer 610.

**Standard subdivisions**

Use notation from Table 1 under 616 only for works clearly limited to the concept of diseases or works focusing on topics named in the class-here note at 616: clinical medicine, evidence-based medicine, internal medicine. Use 610.3 for medical dictionaries, 610.711 for medical schools, 610.92 for doctors not having a distinct specialty. If in doubt, prefer 610 plus notation from Table 1.

**610.92 vs. 615.534092****Biographies of chiropractors**

Use 610.92 for biographies of chiropractors who do not limit their practice. Use 615.534092 for biographies of chiropractors who limit their practice to therapeutic manipulation (615.82) or to manipulation for diseases of the musculoskeletal system (616.7062). If in doubt, prefer 610.92.

**612 vs. 611****Human physiology vs. Human anatomy, cytology, histology**

Physiology deals with how organs work, while anatomy concerns their form and structure. Use 612.1–.9 for works bearing the names of organs or regions that (1) emphasize their physiology, (2) treat physiology as well as anatomy, (3) treat tissue structure as well as gross anatomy, (4) treat cytology (cell biology), or (5) treat histology (tissue biology). Use 611.1–.9 for works bearing the names of organs or regions that emphasize gross anatomy. Use 611.018 for treatment of anatomy, physiology, and pathology at the cytological and histological level if not limited to specific organs or regions. If in doubt, prefer 612.

**612.1–8****Physiology of specific functions, systems, organs**

612.1–8 contains the basic division of the human body into physiological systems. Parallel subdivisions 1–8 appear in shortened or slightly altered form under 611 for human anatomy; under 615.7 for pharmacokinetics; under 616 for diseases; and under 617.4 for surgery by system.

Use 612.1–8 as a guide to classing an organ or function not provided for in one of the parallel arrays, e.g., use 615.74 Drugs affecting lymphatic and glandular systems for pharmacokinetics of the pituitary gland, as this is parallel to 612.4 Hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular, urinary systems, where the pituitary gland is named at 612.492; use 615.73 Drugs affecting digestive system and metabolism for pharmacokinetics of the pancreas, as this is parallel to 612.3 Digestion, where the pancreas is named at 612.34. However, use 615.761, where the urinary system is given, for pharmacokinetics of the kidneys, even though kidney physiology is at 612.463, under 612.46, where the urinary system appears in the 612 schedule.

**612.8 vs. 152****Physiology of nervous system vs. Psychology of sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives**

Use 612.8 for works that emphasize the physical and chemical mechanisms and pathways of sensations, emotions, and movements, e.g., 612.8232 for studies using electrodes to determine how the brain processes emotions. Use 152 for works that emphasize awareness, sensation, intentions, meanings, and actions as experienced by the individual or observed and described without reference to the physics or chemistry of the nervous system, e.g., 152.47 for feeling anger. Use 152 for comprehensive works. If in doubt, prefer 612.8.

**613 vs. 612, 615.8****Personal health and safety vs. Human physiology vs. Specific therapies and kinds of therapies**

Topics in 613 also appear in 612, e.g., exercise 612.044 and 613.71, rest 612.76 and 613.79. Use 613 numbers for works on applied or “how to stay healthy” aspects; use 612 numbers for works on descriptive physiology or “how the body works” aspects. Use 612 for comprehensive treatment of descriptive physiology and promotion of personal health. Use 613 for works that give information about physiology as background for an emphasis on promotion of personal health. If in doubt, prefer 613.

Topics in 613 also appear in 615.8, e.g., breathing 613.192 and 615.836, diet 613.2 and 615.854, exercise 613.71 and 615.82. Use 613 numbers for works on preventive or “staying healthy” aspects; use 615.8 numbers for works on therapeutic or “regaining health” aspects. Use 613 for comprehensive works. If in doubt, prefer 613.

**614.4****Epidemiology**

The term “epidemiology” sometimes refers to a research technique with application outside 614, e.g., in determining etiologies, such as smoking as a cause of cancer 616.994071; in determining the dimensions of social service requirements, such as the incidence, extent, severity of mental retardation 362.32; in exploring the possible

effectiveness of proposed preventive measures, such as in reducing traffic accidents 363.1257.

### 615.1 vs. 615.2–3

#### **Drugs (Materia medica) vs. Specific drugs and groups of drugs**

Most drugs are organic (615.3). Use 615.1 for comprehensive works on drugs even if there is a strong predominance of organic drugs, as long as coverage of inorganic drugs is in proportion to their importance. However, use 615.321 for comprehensive works on crude drugs and simples (products that serve as drugs with minimal processing, e.g., medicinal teas). If in doubt, prefer 615.1.

### 615.1 vs. 615.7

#### **Drugs (Materia medica) vs. Pharmacokinetics**

The term “pharmacology” may be used in the titles of works mainly limited to pharmacokinetics. Use 615.1 if the table of contents is arranged by types of drugs. Also use 615.1 for comprehensive works on drugs. Use 615.7 if the table of contents is arranged by physiological systems or if the work emphasizes the physiological and therapeutic action of drugs. If in doubt, prefer 615.1.

### 615.2–3 vs. 615.7

#### **Specific drugs and groups of drugs vs. Pharmacokinetics**

Use 615.2–3 for drugs that have an effect on several physiological systems or are not known primarily for their effect on a single system, e.g., antibiotics 615.329. Use 615.7 for drugs known primarily for their effect on a single system, e.g., digitalis 615.711 Cardiotonic agents, or 616.129061 Drug therapy for heart failure (*not* 615.32395 Drugs derived from Scrophulariales); alcohol 615.7828 (*not* 615.32). If in doubt, prefer 615.2–3.

### 615.53

#### **General therapeutic systems**

Use 615.53 only for historical or theoretical works about general therapeutic systems, e.g., a discussion of the theory of chiropractic 615.534. Use therapy numbers for works that discuss the application of these systems to therapy, e.g., the application of chiropractic 615.82. Use numbers in 616–618 when the therapies are applied to specific conditions, e.g., chiropractic in musculoskeletal diseases 616.7062.

#### **Biography**

Class biographies of founders of therapeutic systems with the system, e.g., use 615.533092 for a biography of Andrew Taylor Still, the founder of osteopathy. However, use 610.92 for other practitioners of a specific system.

*See also discussion at 610.92 vs. 615.534092.*

### 615.7 vs. 615.9

#### **Pharmacokinetics vs. Toxicology**

Use 615.704, or the number in 615.71–78 for the system affected, for toxic effects and interactions of drugs primarily of pharmacokinetic interest. However, use 615.9 when a drug primarily of pharmacokinetic interest is considered a poison because it is so toxic that a single inadvertent ingestion would cause serious complications or death, e.g.,

the pharmacokinetics of atropine (belladonna) 615.7 (*not* in any specific subdivision because it affects several systems), but the toxicology of belladonna 615.95239593. If in doubt, prefer 615.7.

## 615.8

### Specific therapies and kinds of therapies

Class the application of therapies listed in 615.8 to certain specific types of disorders with the disorder, even if the work takes the application for granted without highlighting it in the title, e.g., use 616.9940642 (*not* 615.842) for radiotherapy emphasizing cancer treatment; use 616.891654 (*not* 615.85154) for music therapy emphasizing psychiatric uses.

## 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299

### Religious and psychic therapies vs. Religious healing and Christian gift of healing

Use 615.852 for works on healing and medicine that focus on religious practices as a part of the medical practice. Use 203.1, 234.131, and similar numbers in 292–299 for works on healing as a religious practice, including such topics as religious beliefs about illness, rituals and prayers for healing, miraculous cures by charismatic leaders or saints, e.g., healing in religions of North American native peoples 299.7131 (number built with 31 from 203.1). Works on healing as a religious practice may also be concerned with emotional or spiritual healing as well as physical healing, or in place of physical healing. Use 615.8528 for works on the use of psychic powers in healing that do not mention a religious context. If in doubt, prefer 615.852.

Class other works concerning illness or medicine and religion as follows:

Religion and the art and science of medicine	201.661
Christianity	261.561
Other religions	292–299
Religion and health and illness and the social questions and programs concerning them	201.7621
Christianity	261.8321
Other religions	292–299
Discussion of whether cures are miracles	202.117
Christianity	231.73
Philosophy of religion	212

## 616 vs. 612

### Diseases vs. Human physiology

Use 616 for comprehensive works on diseases that move from a discussion of physiology to a more general consideration of causes of disease, complications, prevention, and therapy. Use 612 for comprehensive works on physiology (612) and pathological physiology (616.07). For example, use 616.1 for the physiology, pathology, and therapeutics of the circulatory system, but use 612.1 for the normal and pathological conditions of the circulatory system. If in doubt, prefer 616.

## 616 vs. 616.075

### Clinical medicine

Use 616 for works on clinical medicine covering the application of all branches of medicine to the treatment of various diseases. Use 616.075 for works on clinical

medicine limited to diagnosis or to the work of a clinical diagnostic laboratory. If in doubt, prefer 616.

### 616 vs. 617.4

#### Nonoperative therapies

Use numbers in 616 for most works on nonoperative therapies, e.g., therapeutic manipulations of muscles 616.74062 (*not* 617.473062). Use 617.4, which is primarily limited to operative surgery of systems, for nonoperative therapies only if they have some connection with operative surgery, e.g., electrotherapy by heart pacer 617.4120645, since the pacer must be surgically implanted (617.4120592). If in doubt, prefer 616.

### 616 vs. 618.92

#### Diseases vs. Pediatrics

Use 616 for diseases that are most often treated in children, but that remain lifetime problems or threats, e.g., congenital diseases 616.043, mumps 616.313. Use 618.92 only if the work in hand is limited to the occurrence of the disease in children, e.g., mumps in children 618.92313. If in doubt, prefer 616.

### 616.1–9

#### Specific diseases

#### Add table

071 vs. 01

Etiology vs. Microbiology

Use notation 071 when a work considers multiple possible causes for a disease, e.g., genetic factors, environmental factors, and viruses as causes of cancer 616.994071. Use notation 01 or one of its subdivisions if the emphasis is on microorganisms or a specific type of microorganism, even when the cause of a disease is complex and not yet fully understood, e.g., oncogenic viruses 616.994019. If in doubt, prefer notation 071.

Use notation 01 without further subdivision when the etiological agent for a specific disease is known to be a single type of microorganism, unless predisposing and contributing factors are emphasized, e.g., *Treponema pallidum* causing syphilis 616.951301, but predisposing factors leading to severity of syphilis 616.9513071.

### 616.8583

#### Homosexuality

Use 616.8583 for homosexuality only when the work treats homosexuality as a medical disorder, or focuses on arguing against the views of those who consider homosexuality to be a medical disorder. Class works about gay men and lesbians in relation to other topics in medicine with the topic plus notation 08664 from Table 1, e.g., advice to gay men and lesbians about finding psychotherapy for a variety of psychiatric problems 616.891408664. Class most works about gay men and lesbians outside medicine, e.g., Christian attitudes to homosexuality 270.08664, interdisciplinary works on homosexuality 306.766, gay men and lesbians in armed forces 355.008664. If in doubt, prefer a number other than 616.8583.

**616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29****Recovery from addiction**

Use 616.86 for self-help programs for individuals recovering from substance abuse and interdisciplinary works about recovery programs that focus on the individual's life with addiction, covering the individual's experience with both social and medical aspects. Use 204.42, 248.8629, and similar numbers in 292–299 for religious guides and inspirational works for the recovering addict. Use 362.29 for works on organizations providing recovery programs, including administration of the program, and interdisciplinary works that cover both organizational and therapeutic aspects of recovery programs. If in doubt, prefer 616.86.

Class works that treat recovery programs for people recovering from a specific kind of substance abuse as a medical service with the substance in 616.86, plus notation 06 Therapy or notation 03 Rehabilitation from the table under 616.1–9, whether the programs are run by professionals, such as psychiatrists or clinical psychologists, or whether they are self-help programs run by laypeople. Use notation 06 for programs to arrest the illness and begin recovery, e.g., twelve step programs. Use notation 03 for programs to help the individual remain in recovery. If in doubt, prefer notation 06.

Class works that treat recovery programs for those recovering from a specific kind of substance abuse as a social service, with the substance in 362.29, plus notation 86 Counseling and guidance from the table under 362–363. Such works typically emphasize the organizational or institutional aspects of the program.

For example, use 616.86103 for interdisciplinary works on life as a recovering alcoholic; 616.86106 for the twelve step Alcoholics Anonymous program; 204.42 for a general guide for a recovering alcoholic on how to live a religious life; 248.86292 for a guide for a recovering alcoholic on how to live a Christian life; 362.29286 for comprehensive works on Alcoholics Anonymous, the organization that provides the twelve step program and places for individuals in the program to meet.

Do not use 158.1 for works on recovery from addiction, because psychology applied to a medical problem is classed with the medical problem, not in 150.

**616.89 vs. 150.195****Mental disorders vs. Psychoanalytic systems**

Use 616.89 and similar numbers (616.852, 616.858, 618.76) for applications of a psychoanalytic system in psychiatry, e.g., 616.8917 for psychoanalytic treatment of mental illness. Use the appropriate subdivision of 150 for applications of a psychoanalytic system to specific topics or branches of normal psychology, or to specific topics or branches of both normal and abnormal psychology, e.g., 154.63 for Freudian theories of dream analysis. Use 150.195 for comprehensive works on a psychoanalytic system or its founder, e.g., 150.1952 for Freudian system. If in doubt, prefer 616.89.

**617****Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology****Add table****06****Therapy**

Do not use notation 06 by itself with numbers whose meaning is limited to surgery, since surgery is a therapy. Add subdivisions of 06 to surgery numbers for specific physical therapies used in preparation for or rehabilitation from operative surgery, or for branches of surgery not limited to operative surgery, e.g., drug therapy in treatment of burns 617.11061. Use notation 06 freely under numbers not limited to surgery, e.g., ophthalmologic therapy 617.706.

**617.5****Regional medicine**

This number brings together two different concepts: (1) regions, which incorporate parts of several physiological systems, e.g., the abdominal region 617.55; and (2) organs, which are parts of single systems, e.g., the stomach 617.553. Use numbers for regions in 617.5 for works covering regional medicine as well as regional surgery, but use notation 059 from the table under 617 for works limited to regional surgery, e.g., diseases of abdomen 617.55, abdominal surgery 617.55059. Use numbers for specific organs in 617.5 only for surgery, since nonsurgical treatment is given with the system in 616.1–8, and do not add notation 059 by itself except for surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques, e.g., diseases of stomach 616.33, cryosurgery of stomach 617.553059, but stomach surgery 617.553. Use notation 0592–0598 from the table under 617 with numbers for specific organs for plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs, implantation and removal of assistive devices for organs, endoscopic surgery, and laser surgery, e.g., liver transplantation 617.55620592. If in doubt for organs, prefer 616, or 617.6–8 for teeth, eyes, and ears. If in doubt for regions, prefer 617.5.

**618.92097 vs. 617****Regional medicine, ophthalmology, otology, audiology in pediatrics vs. Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology**

Use 618.92097 for nonsurgical specialties given in 617.5 (regional medicine) and 617.7–8 (ophthalmology, otology, audiology) when applied to children. Use 617.98 for comprehensive works on surgical specialties applied to children. Use the number for the subject in 617, plus notation 0083 from the table under 617 if appropriate, for works on surgery of a specific organ, system, disorder applied to children, e.g., medicine of the back for children 618.9209756, but surgery of the back for children 617.560083.

Use 617 for both nonsurgical and surgical aspects of topics given in 617.1–2 when applied to children, e.g., pediatric sports medicine 617.1027083. Use 617.6 for both medical and surgical aspects of dentistry for children, e.g., comprehensive works 617.645, diseases of the teeth and gums 617.630083, dental surgery 617.605083.

If in doubt, prefer 618.92097.

**618.977 vs. 617****Special branches of geriatric medicine vs. Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology**

Use 618.9775–.9778 for nonsurgical specialties given in 617.5–.8 (regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology) when applied to people in late adulthood. Use 617.97 for comprehensive works on surgical specialties applied to people in late adulthood. Use the number for the subject in 617, plus notation 00846 from the table under 617 if appropriate, for works on surgery of a specific organ, system, disorder applied to people in late adulthood, e.g., medicine of the back for people in late adulthood 618.97756, but surgery of the back for people in late adulthood 617.5600846; diseases of the teeth and gums 618.97763, but dental surgery 617.6050846.

Use 617 for both nonsurgical and surgical aspects of topics given in 617.1–.2 when applied to people in late adulthood, e.g., injuries in late adulthood 617.100846.

If in doubt, prefer 618.977.

**622.22, 622.7 vs. 662.6, 669****In-situ processing and ore dressing vs. Chemical engineering of fuels and metallurgy**

Use 622.22 or the number for the specific material in 622.3 for in-situ processing, which uses chemical techniques to get the target materials (or compounds containing the target materials) out of the ground and is usually considered as mining, e.g., solution mining of uranium 622.34932. However, class in-situ processing of a fossil fuel in the chemical engineering number for the material produced, as this usually transforms the fuel into another form, e.g., coal gasification 665.772.

Use 622.7 for ore dressing, which refers to physical means of separating more usable ore from the low-grade materials that are dug out of the ground, e.g., magnetic separation of iron ore 622.77. However, use a number in chemical engineering (usually metallurgy, 669) when physical means that effect substantial chemical change are applied, e.g., electrodeposition of iron from ores 669.14.

Class use of high temperatures that cause drastic chemical changes in chemical engineering, e.g., pyrometallurgy 669.0282.

If in doubt, prefer 622.22 or 622.7.

**624 vs. 624.1****Civil engineering vs. Structural engineering**

Use 624 for basic texts on civil engineering that discuss both (1) structural engineering (which treats the specific subdisciplines of civil engineering that have general applicability to all kinds of structures) and (2) the various types of structures to which the engineering is applied. Use 624.1 only for works that take a narrow view of structural engineering, and do not discuss the various types of structures. If in doubt, prefer 624.

**624 vs. 690****Civil engineering vs. Construction of buildings**

Use 624 for works about “building” or “construction” covering construction of all types of structures. Use 690 only for works limited to discussion of habitable structures (buildings). If in doubt, prefer 624.

**629.046 vs. 388****Transportation equipment vs. Transportation**

Use 629.046 and other vehicle numbers in 600 (e.g., 623.74, 623.82, 625.2, 629.1–4, and 688.6) for:

1. Description of the vehicle, e.g., steam locomotives of the 1930s 625.26109043
2. Technology of the vehicle, e.g., design tests for ships 623.810287
3. Operation (technical) of the vehicle, e.g., piloting spacecraft 629.4582
4. Maintenance and repair of the vehicle, e.g., repairing motorcycles 629.28775

Use 385–388 for:

1. Services provided by the vehicle, e.g., transportation of passengers by trains 385.22
2. Operation (general) of the vehicle, e.g., duties of the ship’s captain 387.54044
3. Economic and social aspects of the vehicle, e.g., a register of the airplanes owned by a company 387.73340216

Use 385–388 for interdisciplinary works. If in doubt, prefer 629.046 and other vehicle numbers in 600.

**629.1366 vs. 387.740426****Air traffic control**

Use 629.1366 for the equipment needed for air traffic control, e.g., radar devices, and the duties of the air traffic controllers. Use 387.740426 for general operational aspects, e.g., determining how many controllers are needed per airport; for economic and social aspects, e.g., the radio call letters of the control tower; and for interdisciplinary works. If in doubt, prefer 629.1366.

**629.43, 629.45 vs. 559.9, 919.904, 910.919****Space flight vs. Earth sciences of, geography of, and travel in space and on extraterrestrial worlds**

Use 629.43 and 629.45 for engineering aspects of traveling to or near extraterrestrial worlds, e.g., Viking Mars Program 629.43543. Use 559.9 and notation 0999 from Table 1 in 551–553 for discoveries in extraterrestrial worlds emphasizing the “earth sciences” of the world, e.g., volcanic activity of Mars 551.21099923. Use 919.904 (and similar numbers built with notation 04 from table under 913–919) for accounts of actual or projected travel to or near extraterrestrial worlds, with or without humans on board, e.g., humans traveling to Earth’s moon 919.9104. Use 919.904 for comprehensive works on space travel. Use 910.919 for space travel near Earth, e.g., space travel in Earth’s orbit, suborbital space tourism.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 629.43, 629.45, 559.9, 919.904, 910.919.

*See also discussion at 520 vs. 500.5, 523.1, 530.1.*

### **630 vs. 579–590, 641.3**

#### **Agriculture and related technologies vs. Natural history of specific kinds of organisms vs. Food**

##### **Interdisciplinary numbers**

Use numbers in 630 for interdisciplinary works on domestic plants and animals, or works discussing species known almost exclusively in agriculture. Use numbers in 630 as the interdisciplinary numbers for species if the work discusses varieties not known in nature. Use numbers in 579 or 580–590 for interdisciplinary works on plants and animals in general.

Use numbers in 630 for works that have material on where to find species in the wild, but concentrate on how to grow them, e.g., finding and growing wild flowers 635.9676 (*not* 582.13); where aquarium fishes are found and how to raise them 639.34 (*not* 597). Use numbers in 579 or 580–590 as the interdisciplinary numbers for species harvested in the wild, e.g., mushrooms, trees, and fishes, unless the species is best known for a single product, e.g., teak for lumber 674.144 (*not* 583.96).

Use 641.3 for interdisciplinary works on food. Use 641.3 (*not* 579, 580–590 or 630) for works that discuss the utilization and food value as well as the agriculture and biology of edible plants and animals.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 630, 641.3, 579 or 580–590.

### **632.95 vs. 632.2–.8**

#### **Pesticides vs. Specific diseases and pests**

Pesticides are an exception to the general rule that control of specific pests and diseases is classed with the disease or pest. Use 632.95 if a work concentrates on a pesticide, discussing the mechanism of action, the on-farm environmental effects, or the safety aspects, even if the pesticide is used only on a single kind of pest or disease.

Use 632.2–.8 if the work treats control of the pest or disease in crops, rather than emphasizing the pesticide and its toxicity. For example, use 632.951 for a work on how a rodenticide kills rats, or how it is a danger to local wildlife that eats poisoned rats, 632.9540289 for the safety hazards of herbicides; but use 632.69352 for a work on how to control rats by laying out rodenticides, 632.5 for a work on how to control weeds by spraying herbicides. If in doubt, prefer 632.95.

Use 632.95 for on-farm environmental effects of pesticides only if the work is limited to technical aspects. Use 363.7384 for interdisciplinary works on environmental effects of pesticides.

### **633–635**

#### **Specific plant crops**

Certain plants have more than one number if they are important for two or more quite different crops. Some of the more important distinctions are:

**Cereals versus cereal grasses (633.1 vs. 633.25)**

Use 633.1 if the cereal is grown for grain (even if the fodder is an important by-product), but use 633.25 if the whole plant is to be consumed by livestock (even if the grain is allowed to ripen).

**Legumes (633.3 vs. 635.65)**

Use 633.3 if the legume is grown for either the ripened seed or forage, but use 635.65 if the pod is to be picked green or unripened for human consumption.

**Other crops**

For crops that are listed in only one number, use that number if the difference in production techniques and the appearance of the crop produced by the farmer is minor, e.g., use 635.21 for potatoes whether grown for food, feed, or starch, as they are all grown in the same manner and look alike. However, use 634.9753 for hemlocks grown for lumber, but 635.97752 for hemlocks grown for landscaping, as they are grown in a quite different manner and look quite different when shipped. If the crop described in a work does not fit existing numbers where the plant is named, use the closest suitable number, e.g., a legume grown for hard fibers 633.58. If in doubt, prefer the existing number coming first in the schedule.

**635.9 vs. 582.1****Flowers and ornamental plants in agriculture vs. Herbaceous and woody plants, plants noted for their flowers**

Use 635.9 (often 635.97 Other groupings of ornamental plants) for works that emphasize plants to be cultivated or appreciated in human-made settings. Use 582.1 for works that emphasize the plants in nature or their biology. If in doubt, prefer 635.9.

*See also discussion at 630 vs. 579–590, 641.3.*

**636.1–.8 vs. 636.088****Specific kinds of domestic animals vs. Animals for specific purposes**

Use numbers in 636.1–.8 for terms used in subdivisions of 636.088 applied to specific kinds of domestic animals. Terms listed in 636.088 may apply to only one or a few kinds of animals provided for in 636.1–.8 and are therefore used primarily for number building. For example, the numbers for raising cows for milk and raising poultry for eggs are both derived in part from the eggs and milk number 636.08842. Notation 42 is added to 636.21 (cattle for specific purposes), giving 636.2142 for dairy farming, and to 636.51 (poultry for specific purposes), giving 636.5142 for egg production. 636.08842 itself will seldom be used, because there are few works on producing both milk and eggs or on producing milk from several kinds of animals. Use 636.5142 for works on producing eggs from several kinds of birds. If in doubt between a subdivision of 636.088 and a derived subdivision under 636.1–.8, prefer the latter.

**636.70886, 636.70888 vs. 636.73, 636.752****Dogs for work and sport vs. Working and sporting dogs**

Use 636.70886 and 636.70888 for works that cover dogs used as work animals (e.g., disaster search and rescue dogs, guide dogs) or dogs used as sport animals (e.g., fighting dogs) without limitation to a specific breed or group of dogs. Dogs as work animals also include dogs used in the movies, on television, and on stage. Sled dogs and watchdogs

are explicit exceptions to the general rule, in that, although they are dogs used as work animals, they are classed in 636.73, since nearly all these dogs belong to the group of breeds recognized as working dogs.

Use 636.73 and 636.752 for works on specific breeds and groups of breeds of dogs, recognized by the American Kennel Club (AKC) as “working dogs” or as “sporting dogs.”

If in doubt, prefer 636.70886 and 636.70888.

## 636.72–.75

### Specific breeds and groups of dogs

The main groupings used are those recognized by the American Kennel Club (AKC) in *The Complete Dog Book*, 1997. The roughly corresponding groupings of the Kennel Club of United Kingdom (KC) are given in class-here notes when the names differ materially. Most, but not all, of the breeds listed in the schedule are those recognized by the AKC. Class other breeds having pedigrees recognized in other nations that fit within the AKC or KC groupings with the groupings, e.g., European gundogs 636.752.

If in doubt about a breed not named in the schedule, class it in 636.7 (*not* 636.71).

### Hounds

Use *Encyclopedia Americana* for help in separating gazehounds (636.7532) from scent hounds (636.7536).

## 636.82–.83

### Specific breeds and kinds of domestic cats

Use David Taylor’s *The Ultimate Cat Book*, 1989, for help in determining where a specific breed of cats should be classed.

## 643.29, 690.879, 728.79 vs. 629.226

### Mobile and motor homes

Use 643.29 for interdisciplinary works on mobile homes and for mobile homes meant to serve as permanent homes. Use 629.226 (where campers, motor homes, trailers [caravans] are presented as types of motor land vehicles) only for what are essentially either automobiles with living accommodation, collapsible living accommodation to be used with trucks or trailers, or trailers with such limited living accommodation that they would not (even when hooked up) serve as permanent homes. Do not use 629.226 for mobile homes that must be towed and are meant to stay in one location for a long time. Use 690.879 for works on building mobile homes, and use 728.79 for works on the architecture of mobile homes. If in doubt, prefer 643.29.

## 647 vs. 647.068, 658.2, T1—0682

### Institutional housekeeping vs. Plant management

Use 647 and subdivisions of 647.9 without the addition of the management notation from Table 1 for most works on the management of institutional households, because the term “management” often refers to the basic techniques of operating an establishment, i.e., to the topics found in 642–646 and 648 taken as a whole, when they apply to public facilities. Use 647.068 (or 647.94068, 647.95068, etc.) only when the work

treats the kind of management topics found in 658.1–.8, e.g., financial management and marketing. If in doubt between 647 and 647.068, prefer 647.

Plant management covers some of the same topics as institutional housekeeping, e.g., utilities, equipment, maintenance. Use 647 (or other 640 numbers for specific aspects) if the emphasis is on doing the actual work, but use 658.2 if the emphasis is on making sure that the work is done, e.g., a how-to work on running utilities for restaurants 644, on hospital housecleaning 648.5; but a work on managing restaurant utilities 647.950682, on managing hospital housecleaning services 362.110682. If in doubt between 647 (or other 640 numbers for specific aspects) and 658.2 (or T1—0682), prefer 647.

### **649.12–.15 vs. 649.1024, 649.108**

#### **Child rearing with respect to groups of people**

##### **Children being reared**

Use 649.12–.15 for a work about rearing a specific group of children if there is provision for the group in 649.12–.15. Notes associated with subdivisions of 649.108 can assist with locating relevant provisions. For example, at 649.108691 is a do-not-use note pointing to 649.1565 for rearing of children with status defined by changes in residence. At 649.1087 is a do-not-use note pointing to 649.15 for rearing of children with disabilities and illnesses, gifted children.

If there is no provision for a specific group of children in 649.12–.15, and there is a relevant provision in a subdivision of 649.108, then use that subdivision for rearing children of that group.

##### **Parents, others associated with the topic of child rearing**

Unless there are instructions to the contrary, use subdivisions of 649.108 for specific groups of parents or other groups associated with child rearing, e.g., child rearing for fathers 649.10851, child rearing for grandparents 649.10853, child rearing for parents with disabilities 649.1087.

In a few cases, there are instructions to use subdivisions of 649.1024. For example, at 649.10855 is a do-not-use note pointing to 649.10245 for works for older children in the family.

##### **Preference order**

Preference order is complicated here. The general pattern is given in the preference note at 649.1: Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 649.1 in the number coming last.

Notes in Table 1 affect preference order for standard subdivisions applied to 649.1. According to the preference note at T1—081—088 Groups of people by specific attributes, the preference order for 649.1081–.1088 is also class with the last.

The preference order between 649.1089 Ethnic and national groups and 649.1081–.1088 is different, as indicated by the class-elsewhere notes in Table 1 at T1—081—088 and at T1—089. However, the difference rarely affects classification in this area because typically parents and the children they are raising belong to the same ethnic or national group; in those cases, the works are classed according to the characteristics of the children. For example, use 649.15796073 (*not* 649.108996073 or 649.132) for works for African American parents raising African American sons.

According to the table of preference at the start of Table 1, T1—024 The subject for people in specific occupations has preference over T1—08. At 649.1, T1—024 has been modified to include some topics usually belonging to subdivisions of T1—08. Do-not-use notes pointing from subdivisions of 649.108 to subdivisions of 649.1024 support the preference for 649.1024. For example, in the case of works for single fathers, the class-with-the-last pattern given in Table 1 at T1—081—088 applies to the choice between 649.10851 for fathers and 649.108652 for single people. This means that 649.108652 is preferred over 649.10851. But at 649.108652 is a do-not-use note pointing to 649.10243 for works for single parents. Therefore, use 649.10243 for works for single fathers.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 649.12–.15, 649.1024, 649.108.

### **658.04 vs. 658.114, 658.402**

#### **Management of enterprises of specific forms vs. Initiation of business enterprises by form of ownership organization vs. Internal organization**

Use 658.04 for comprehensive works on management of enterprises of specific legal or ownership forms (e.g., corporations, partnerships). Use 658.114 for works that focus on initiating enterprises of specific legal or ownership forms—either starting a new business or converting an existing business to a new form, e.g., starting up a new individual proprietorship 658.1141, converting an individual proprietorship to a corporation 658.1145.

Use 658.402 for works on the internal managerial organization of an enterprise (how authority and responsibility are apportioned), not its legal or ownership organization. For example, in a line organization a single manager exercises final authority, either directly over production workers or over several supervisors who in turn supervise workers.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 658.04, 658.114, 658.402.

### **658.45 vs. 651.7, 808.06665**

#### **Communication in management vs. Communication as an office service vs. Business writing**

Use 658.45 for works that focus on use of communication to achieve management goals. These works often emphasize the personal relations aspects of management communication.

Use 651.7 for works emphasizing such topics as the use of the telephone, techniques of dictation, how to use microcomputer software for form letters, mail-handling techniques—in short, the mechanics of communication. Do not use 651.7 for works that emphasize effective business writing style.

Use 808.06665 for style manuals on business writing and works on how to do effective business writing, whether aimed at secretaries or executives. Use 808.066651 for works on how to write a specific type of communication (e.g., business letters) and for model collections of a specific type intended to illustrate good writing style.

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 658.45, 808.06665, 651.7.

**669****Alloys**

Use 669 for comprehensive works on alloys of a variety of metals. Use 669.1–.7 for comprehensive works on a specific alloy, or the alloys of a specific metal. Use 669.9 for the physical and chemical metallurgy of alloys, and the process of forming alloys.

Use the number for the chief constituent metal (if readily ascertainable) for an alloy not listed in 669, e.g., Monel<sup>®</sup>, a nickel alloy of about 67 percent nickel and 30 percent copper 669.7332 (*not* 669.3). If the chief constituent is not readily ascertainable, use the number for the metal coming first in the schedule, except use 669.142 for all alloys of steel.

**671–679 vs. 680****Manufacture of products from specific materials vs. Manufacture of products for specific uses**

In general, use 671–679 for primary products, and use 680 for final products from a given material, e.g., textiles 677, clothing 687. The distinction between 671–679 and 680 cannot be drawn consistently because some products from specific materials are in 680, e.g., leather and fur goods 685; and some products for specific uses are in 671–679, e.g., paper plates and cups 676.34. If in doubt, prefer 671–679.

**680 vs. 745.5****Handicrafts**

Use 680 for crafts in the sense of country crafts, and cottage industries and trades, such as those of the blacksmith (682) or harness maker (685.1). Also use 680 for handicrafts treated as the routine way of manufacturing secondary and final products. Use 745.5 for handicrafts when limited to artistic work. If in doubt, prefer 680.

**690 vs. 643.7****Construction of buildings vs. Renovation, improvement, remodeling in home economics**

Use 690.80286 or other numbers in 690 for works on home renovation and remodeling for professional builders. (Use the special standard subdivision notation 0286 for remodeling in 690 only with numbers drawn from 725–728; do not use a standard subdivision for this subject elsewhere in 690.) Use 643.7 and other numbers in 643 for a broad range of material intended for the do-it-yourself enthusiast, as indicated by the scope note at 643 reading “works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities by members of household.” If in doubt, prefer 690.

**700.92****Persons in the arts**

The instructions for the classification of artists vary, either between major areas of the arts or within one division, e.g., use 738.092 for a carver working in various materials, 736.4092 for a wood carver, 738.092 for a potter regardless of material or product.

Use either notation 092 from Table 1 or notation for period or place for works of an artist or artists as instructed under specific numbers, e.g., use 730.92 for works of a French sculptor, but use 741.944 for drawings by a French artist.

**704.9 and 753–758****Iconography**

Prefer iconography over history and geographic treatment, e.g., a general work on Romanesque art 709.0216, Romanesque painting 759.0216, Romanesque art of Normandy 709.44209021, Romanesque painting of Normandy 759.4209021, but the Virgin Mary and Child in Romanesque art of Normandy 704.948550944209021, the Virgin Mary and Child in Romanesque painting of Normandy 755.550944209021. However, care should be taken in classifying schools and styles that are usually limited in subject matter, such as early Christian, Byzantine, and Romanesque schools, which usually treat religious themes. Use 704.9 or 753–758 only if a point is made that iconography or one of its aspects is the focus of the work.

**Use of standard subdivisions**

Add standard subdivisions to iconography numbers even if the topic does not approximate the whole of the heading. There are four exceptions: 704.9428 and 757.8 Pornography, 704.9434 and 758.5 Plants, 758.3 Animals, and notation from Table 2. For instance, if a work covers only roses in art or dogs in painting, a standard subdivision should not be added.

Add notation 09 from Table 1 plus notation 3–9 from Table 2 to show the nationality or locality of the artists rather than the location of the subject, e.g., Canadian portraits of British royal children 704.94250971, Canadian portrait paintings of British royal children 757.50971. Do not add notation 074 from the table under T1—093–099 in Table 1 unless the area covered by the work being classed approximates the whole of the area indicated by the notation from Table 2.

**709.012–.015, 709.02–.05 vs. 709.3–.9****Fine and decorative arts by periods of development vs. Fine and decorative arts by specific continents, countries, localities**

Class the works produced by an artistic school or in a particular style as follows:

1. From the same locality, with the locality in 709.3–.9
2. From various localities within a specific country, with the country in 709.3–.9
3. From two countries, with the country coming first in Table 2 in 709.3–.9
4. From three or more European countries, with the period when the school or style flourished in 709.012–.015 or 709.02–.05
5. From three or more non-European countries within the same continent, with the continent in 709.3–.9
6. From three or more countries not within the same continent, with the period when the school or style flourished in 709.012–.015 or 709.02–.05

If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 709.012–.015 and 709.02–.05, the country number in 709.3–.9, the locality number in 709.3–.9.

**709.2 vs. 381.457092****Art dealers**

Use 709.2 for art dealers as a part of the art world, e.g., the artists the dealers knew and works of art they handled. Use 381.457092 for works about art dealers that focus on the economics of trading in art. If in doubt, prefer 709.2.

**729****Design and decoration of structures and accessories**

Use 729 only for general works that focus specifically on architectural design. Use 690 for works that treat construction alone, and use 721 for works that treat design and construction together. Use 729 for works on decoration only when the subject is being treated as an aspect of architectural decoration rather than as an art object in itself, e.g., the use of murals as architectural decoration 729.4, but comprehensive works on murals 751.73.

**731–735 vs. 736–739****Sculpture vs. Other plastic arts**

Use 731–735 for products and techniques of sculpture. Use 736–739 for products and techniques of the plastic arts. For example, use 731.74 for a bronze figure that is a sculptured bust, but use 739.512 for a bronze figure that is part of a larger decorative work (such as a finial or handle). If in doubt, prefer 731–735.

**741.5****Choice between comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips and subject**

Use 741.5 and its subdivisions for works of the imagination in comic book, graphic novel, fotonovela, cartoon, caricature, or comic strip forms that are primarily intended to delight. Use 001–999 plus notation 0207 or notation 0222 from Table 1 for works in these forms that are primarily intended to inform or persuade. Use notation 0207 Humorous treatment for works where the author's intention is serious, but where humor is used to convey the author's message; use notation 0222 Pictures and related illustrations for works where humor is not apparent. For example, use 900 plus notation 0207 from Table 1 for cartoon histories that are primarily intended to inform the reader about history, while using humor to convey the message, e.g., a cartoon history of the United States 973.0207; however, use 741.5 and its subdivisions for works that are primarily humorous in intent and merely use snatches of history as an occasion for humor. Use 510 plus notation from Table 1 for a work primarily intended to teach math, even if it has a thin fictional framework. Use 001–999 plus notation from Table 1 for works presented as cartoon textbooks, journalism, biographies or autobiographies about nonfiction topics, e.g., Larry Gonick's *The Cartoon Guide to Physics* 530.0207, Joe Sacco's *Safe Area Goražde* ["the War in Eastern Bosnia, 1992–95"] 949.742, *Our Cancer Year* (by Joyce Grabner and Harvey Pekar; illustrations by Frank Stack) 362.1969940092; however, use 741.5 and its subdivisions for works presented as factual that are known to be fictional, e.g., fictional autobiography. If in doubt about a work presented as a cartoon textbook, journalistic, biographical or autobiographical account about a nonfiction topic, prefer the number for the topic.

See also discussion at T1—0207 vs. T3B—7, T3A—8 + 02, T3B—802, T3B—8 + 02, T3A—8 + 07, T3B—807, T3B—8 + 07.

Use 741.5 and its subdivisions for works in comic book, graphic novel, fotonovela, cartoon, caricature, or comic strip forms that present fictional narratives comparable to short stories or novels in literature. Difficulties arise with nonfiction novels that use the techniques of fiction writing to tell the story of actual people and actual events. Class an account of a true event or series of events using the names of the people involved, not inventing characters or distorting facts to enhance an intended artistic effect, and not going beyond the information available to the author from investigation and interviews, in the discipline appropriate to the facts described, e.g., Rick Geary's *The Beast of Chicago: An Account of the Life and Crimes of Herman W. Mudgett Known to the World as H. H. Holmes* 364.1523092. If, however, the author goes beyond what is learned from investigation and interviews in describing conversations, feelings, thoughts, or states of mind of the people depicted in the book, use 741.5 and its subdivisions. If in doubt about a work that uses techniques of fiction writing, prefer 741.5 and its subdivisions.

Use 741.5 and its subdivisions for adaptations in comic book, graphic novel, fotonovela, cartoon, caricature, or comic strip forms of other works of the imagination, such as literary works, operas, dramatic films, e.g., an adaptation of Kafka's *Metamorphosis* as a graphic novel by Peter Kuper, an American 741.5973. Adaptations of works of the imagination are classed in the number appropriate to the adaptation, not the work being adapted. (Do not regard a translation as an adaptation unless the changes are much greater than is common with translations; for example, use 741.59519 for a graphic novel translated from Korean into English.) Adaptations of nonfiction works, however, are classed with the subject, e.g., *The Picture Bible* (script by Iva Hoth; illustrations by Andre Le Blanc) 220.9505.

## 741.5 vs. 741.56

### Comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas vs. Cartoons, caricatures, comic strips

Use 741.5 and 741.59 for comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, e.g., *Astérix* (by Uderzo and Goscinny), *Astro Boy* (by Osamu Tezuka), *Contract with God and Other Tenement Stories* (by Will Eisner), *Fantastic Four, Nikopol Trilogy* (by Enki Bilal), *Strangers in Paradise* (by Terry Moore), *Tintin* (by Hergé), *Wonder Woman*. These are multi-panel works written to be read in relatively long segments, like short stories or novels. If they were originally published in parts, the parts are likely to have been issued monthly or less frequently (occasionally weekly or biweekly as part of serial anthologies), not daily.

Use 741.56 and 741.569 for cartoons, caricatures, comic strips, e.g., caricatures by Max Beerbohm, Al Hirschfeld, and David Levine; *New Yorker* and *Punch* cartoons; cartoons by Michael Leunig; *Andy Capp* (by Reg Smythe), *Doonesbury* (by G. B. Trudeau), *The Far Side* (by Gary Larson), *For Better or for Worse* (by Lynn Franks Johnston), *Garfield* (by Jim Davis), *Peanuts* (by Charles M. Schulz). These were written to be read in brief segments, like jokes or anecdotes. They have a single panel, or a few panels issued daily or weekly online or in a newspaper; consequently, they have an anecdotal quality even when the same characters appear in many segments brought together in collected works.

Use 741.56 and 741.569 for works originally published as comic strips, unless the same main characters also appear frequently in comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas. Avoid separating works about the same characters between 741.569 and 741.59; use the number for the form in which the characters most commonly appear, regardless of whether the content of the work in hand was originally issued as comic strips or comic

books, e.g., 741.56973 for works about Dick Tracy (most commonly issued as comic strips), but 741.5973 for works about Spider-Man or Star Wars (most commonly issued as comic books). If in doubt, prefer 741.59.

Use 741.5 and 741.59 for comprehensive works on both kinds of graphic works. Use 741.59 for graphic artists and writers who are equally well known for doing both kinds of graphic works.

If in doubt, prefer 741.5 and 741.59.

Use 741.51 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials and 741.53 Special aspects of comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips for both kinds of graphic works.

### **741.593–.599 and 741.5693–.5699**

#### **Specific continents, countries, localities**

Use the same guidelines for selecting geographic notation for cartoons, caricatures, comic strips as for comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas.

Use notation for the country of the artist or writer for a work or a collection that features a particular artist or writer, e.g., a collection of comic books by a single Japanese artist 741.5952. Use the same number for biography or critical appraisal of a single writer or artist, e.g., a biography of the Japanese artist 741.5952. If an artist or writer changes place of residence to another country but does not change citizenship, use the area notation for the country of origin. If the artist or writer does change citizenship, however, use the area notation for the country of adopted citizenship. If information about an artist's or writer's national affiliation is not readily available in the work being classed or in standard reference books, use the area notation for the country of origin, if known; or the notation for the country in which the person's earlier works were published.

Use notation for the country where first published for a work or a collection where multiple hands (e.g., writers, pencilers, inkers, colorists, letterers) have contributed and no one artist or writer is featured, if the work reflects the culture of that country, e.g., a graphic novel first published in the United States 741.5973, a graphic novel first published in Japan then translated into English and published in the United States 741.5952 (*not* 741.5973).

If in doubt, try to determine what area's cultural tradition the work primarily reflects or was originally aimed at, and use the notation for that area. If still in doubt, prefer notation for the area that comes later in Table 2.

### **741.6 vs. 800**

#### **Illustrations**

Use 741.6 for illustration in general. Class a specific type of illustration with the art form represented if the type is emphasized, e.g., etchings. Use 800 for illustrations that merely accompany or enhance the literary text. If in doubt, prefer 741.6.

### **745.1**

#### **Antiques**

Use the available number in 700 for a specific type of antique, e.g., gold coins 737.43, antique New England furniture 749.0974.

If there is no available number in 700–779, use the 600–699 number for a specific type of antique, e.g., antique passenger automobiles 629.222. If there are separate numbers in 600–699 for the use of the object and for its manufacture, prefer the use number, e.g., thimbles 646.19 (*not* 687.8).

If there is no available number in either 600–699 or 700–779 for a specific antique or collectible, class it with the subject with which it is most closely associated, e.g., Shirley Temple collectibles 791.43028092.

## 745.5928

### **Handcrafted models and miniatures**

Class handcrafted miniatures and models as follows:

Use 700 for handcrafted models:

1. If there is a specific number in 700 for the model, e.g., paper airplanes 745.592.
2. If there is a specific number in 700 for the subject illustrated by the model, e.g., handcrafted miniature furniture 749.0228. (Use notation 0228 from Table 1 to indicate the model or miniature.)
3. If there is no number in 600 for the model or the subject illustrated by the model. In this case the most specific number possible is chosen.

Use 600 for handcrafted models and miniatures if there is no specific number in 700 *and* either of the following conditions is met:

1. If there is a specific number in 600 for the model, e.g., handcrafted model airplanes 629.133134.
2. If there is a specific number for the subject illustrated by the model, e.g., handcrafted miniature reciprocating steam engines 621.1640228. (Use notation 0228 from Table 1 to indicate the model or miniature.)

## 769.9

### **History, geographic treatment, biography of printmaking and prints**

Use 769.92 for both printmakers who copy other artists and the artists being copied (if only prints are being discussed), e.g., prints after Gainsborough 769.92. Use 769.93–.99 for prints produced by a print workshop or a studio. If in doubt, prefer 769.92.

## 776 vs. 006.5–.7

### **Computer art**

Use 776 for comprehensive works on computer art and for works on computer art where the computer itself displays the art object or creates the final art object. Use 700–780 plus notation 0285 from Table 1 or specific provisions in the schedule for works on computers used as tools or devices to create art objects, e.g., computers and the arts 700.285, computers in the graphic arts 740.285, computer composition of music 781.34.

Use 006.5–.7 for works on the computer hardware and software used in computer arts, e.g., computer sound 006.5, computer graphics 006.6, multimedia systems 006.7. Such works will typically tell how to use the hardware or the software, and may include information on such topics as file compression.

If in doubt, prefer 776.

### 779 vs. 770.92

#### Photographic images vs. Biography

Use 779 and its subdivisions, plus notation 092 from Table 1, for collections and critical appraisals of photographic images by individuals. Use 779 and its subdivisions, plus notation 09 from Table 1 and notation 1–9 from Table 2, for collections and critical appraisals of photographic images by several artists from the same area to show the area where the photographers originated, e.g., collections of portrait photographs by French photographers 779.20944. In both cases, the collection may contain one or more type of photographic images, e.g., photographs, prints, digital images, filmstrips, slides, transparencies. Use 770.92 for biographies and critical appraisals of the body of the photographers' works, which may also contain some photographic images. If in doubt, prefer 779.

## 780

### Music

#### Building numbers

Building a number for a work that is classed in 780 is a four-step process:

1. Determine the various facets of the work.
2. Arrange the facets in the proper order.
3. Determine whether or not the topics belonging to the facets can be indicated.
4. Follow the add instructions.

For example, in building the number for a work entitled *Harmony in Beethoven's piano sonatas*, one takes the following steps:

1. *Determine the various facets of the work:* For the work being classed, there are four facets, or aspects: a general musical topic, harmony; the composer, Beethoven; the instrument, piano; and a musical form, sonata.
2. *Arrange the facets in proper order:* The usual arrangement is the executant (the voice or instrument that produces the music), here the piano at 786.2; the music form, here the sonata at 784.183; general principles, here harmony at 781.25; standard subdivisions, here a person associated with the music at 780.92 (in this case Beethoven). This arrangement obeys the general instruction at 780, which states: unless other instructions are given, class subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 780 in the one coming last. The major exception to executant before form occurs with vocal music (*see 782 for complete details*). If one decided to follow the option of classing all works related to a composer in 789, the arrangement would then be composer, the executant, the musical form, general principles, other standard subdivisions.
3. *Determine whether or not the topics belonging to the facets can be indicated:* If the topic is given in a class-here note or is the same or approximately the same as a number's heading, a topic from another facet can be indicated. If the topic is given in an including note, topics in other facets cannot be indicated. Since the topics, piano, sonata, and harmony, are the headings at 786.2, 784.183, and 781.25, respectively, further topics can be indicated. (For *Harmony in Chopin's mazurkas for piano*, the

topics harmony and Chopin cannot be indicated because mazurka is a part of the including note at 784.1884.)

4. *Follow the add instructions:* At 786.2 \*Pianos, the \* refers to the footnote, which instructs one to add as instructed in the add table under the centered entry at 784–788. The add instruction in the add table says that musical forms and instruments are shown by adding 1, then the numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–.19. Thus, facet indicator 1 plus 83 from 784.183 †Sonata form and sonatas added to 786.2 produces 786.2183 Piano sonatas. At 784.183, the † refers to the footnote, which instructs one to add as instructed in the add table under the centered entry at 781.2–.8, which says that in order to show general principles add 1 and then the numbers following 781 in 781.1–.7. The result of adding 1 and then 25 from 781.25 \*Harmony is 786.2183125 harmony in piano sonatas. Even though the \* at 781.25 indicates that further additions are possible, i.e., adding 092 to indicate Beethoven, the general add instruction at 780 forbids using 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice. (An option does allow further additions.) Thus, the class number for *Harmony in Beethoven's piano sonatas* is 786.2183125.

### Examples

#### *Works about music*

New music vocabulary: a guide to notational signs	780.148
Music notation	780.148
Sound structure in music	781.234
Timbre	781.234
New life in country music	781.642
Western popular music	
Country	781.642
Wagner as man and artist	782.1092
Opera	782.1
General biography and criticism	092 (from Table 1)
Voice production in choral technique	782.5143
Choral music	782.5
Facet indicator	1
Performance technique	43 (from 781.43)
Bartok orchestral music [criticism]	784.2092
Orchestra	784.2
Composer	092 (from Table 1)
Bartok. Concerto for orchestra [criticism]	784.2186
Orchestra	784.2
Facet indicator	1
Concerto form	86 (from 784.186)
Scoring for brass band	784.9138
Brass band	784.9
Facet indicator	1
Arrangement	38 (from 781.38)

Beethoven string quartets [criticism]	785.7194092
Chamber group-strings	785.7
Size of ensemble	19
Quartet	4 (from 785.14)
Composer	092 (from Table 1)
The fugue in piano music	786.21872
Piano	786.2
Facet indicator	1
Fugue	872 (from 784.1872)
Scientific piano tuning and servicing	786.21928
Piano	786.2
Facet indicator	1
Tuning	928 (from 784.1928)
The origins of bowing	787.1936909
Bowed stringed instruments	787
Facet indicator	1
Bowing	9369 (from 784.19369)
History	09 (from Table 1)
Pablo Casals; a biography	787.4092
Cello	787.4
Performers	092 (from Table 1)
Discography of zither music	016.78770266
Subject bibliography	016
Zither	787.7
Recordings	0266 (from 780.266)
The organs of London	786.519421
Organ	786.5
Facet indicator	19
London	421 (from Table 2)
The Story of "Silent Night"	782.281723
Carols	782.28
Facet indicator	1
Christmas music	723 (from 781.723)

*Scores*

Hymns for choirs, arranged for mixed voices and organ by David Willcocks	782.527
Choral music for mixed voices	782.5
Hymns	27 (from 782.27)
Lees. Breathe on me, breath of God; anthem for 3-part female voice choir unaccompanied	782.6265

Choral music-women's voices	782.6
Anthems	265 (from 782.265)
Schubert song cycles	783.247
Solo voice	783.2
Song cycle	47 (from 782.47)
Brahms. Variations on the St. Anthony Chorale	784.21825
Orchestra	784.2
Facet indicator	1
Variations	825 (from 784.1825)
Berlioz. Romeo and Juliet; a dramatic symphony	784.22184
Orchestra with vocal parts	784.22
Facet indicator	1
Symphony form	84 (from 784.184)
Schuller. Trio: oboe, horn, viola	785.42193
Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings	785.42
Size of ensemble	19
Trios	3 (from 785.13)
Chopin. Mazurka, piano	786.21884
Piano	786.2
Facet indicator	1
Mazurka form	884 (from 784.1884)

**780.079 vs. 790.2**

**Music and the performing arts vs. The performing arts in general**

Use 780.079 for works focusing on music in relation to the other performing arts. Use 790.2 for works on the performing arts as a whole. If in doubt, prefer 780.079.

**780.26**

**Texts; treatises on music scores and recordings**

Within 780, add 026 (from 780.26) to the number in 781–788 to indicate treatises about scores and recordings. (To distinguish scores and recordings themselves within 780, apply the optional provision given at 780.) However, when 780 and 781–788 numbers are added elsewhere in the schedules, add 026 for scores and recordings, as well as for treatises about them. For example:

Number	Used for
787.2	A treatise on violin music
787.2	Violin scores
787.2	Recordings of violin music
787.2026	A treatise on violin scores
787.20266	A treatise on recordings of violin music
016.7872	A bibliography of treatises on violin music
016.7872026	A bibliography of violin scores
016.7872026	A bibliography of treatises on violin scores
016.78720266	A discography of recordings of violin music
016.78720266	A bibliography of treatises on recordings of violin music

**780.92 and 791.092****Biography of persons associated with public performances**

Use the number for the activity with which the person's career is chiefly identified for the biography of a performer, e.g., the biography of an opera singer 782.1092. If the person's career involves more than one kind of public performance with no particular predominance, use the activity that comes first in the following table of preference:

Music	780
Dancing	792.8
Stage	792
Motion pictures	791.43
Television	791.45
Radio	791.44

For example, use 792.028092 for the biography of a stage actor who has also done considerable work in television. Give preference to activities listed in the above table over all other activities listed in 791.

**780.92****Musicians and composers****Musicians**

Comprehensive works on musicians are classed in the most specific number that describes their careers. Use 780.92 only for musicians who are equally known for both their vocal and instrumental work, e.g., Ludwig van Beethoven 780.92. Use 782–783 for musicians known primarily for vocal music, e.g., Richard Wagner, an opera composer, 782.1092; Elvis Presley, a rock singer, 782.42166092. Use 784–788 for musicians known primarily for instrumental music, e.g., Sir Thomas Beecham, a conductor, 784.2092; Nicolò Paganini, a violinist, 787.2092. (*See also 781.6 for discussion of musicians associated with traditions of music other than classical.*)

*See also discussion at 784–788: Add table: 092.*

**Composers**

Use notation 092 from Table 1 to indicate a biography, a general criticism of the composer, an analysis of a composer's contribution to the development of some aspect of music (such as Haydn's role in the development of the concerto form), critical works on the body of a composer's work (such as a critique of the piano music of Ravel), and a collection of analyses of the individual pieces of music. Do not use notation 092 for criticism of an individual work by a composer.

The citation order for music requires that general criticism of a composer's works in a specific form and criticism of a single aspect of the works be separated because the aspect is shown by adding from 781. For example, use 784.2184092 for general criticism of Brahms's symphonies, but use 784.2184125 for criticism of harmony in Brahms's symphonies. However, if a library wishes to keep all criticism of a composer's works in the same number, it is optional not to add from 781, e.g., criticism of Brahms's symphonies and of harmony in Brahms's symphonies both 784.2184092.

*See also discussion at 784–788: Add table: 092.*

**781.38****Arrangements**

Add 138 (the arrangement notation derived from 781.38) to the number in 782–788 for a voice, instrument, or ensemble to indicate arrangements in general either of or for the voice, instrument, or ensemble. For example, use 787.2138 for both violin music arranged for various instruments and music of several instruments arranged for the violin, 787.2 (violin music) plus 138 (arrangements).

Add 1382–1388 (the arrangement notation derived from 781.382–.388) to the number in 782–788 for a voice, instrument, or ensemble for which the music was arranged in order to indicate the original voice, instrument, or ensemble. Use 781.382–.388 only for building other numbers; never use these numbers by themselves. For example, use 786.213872 for an arrangement of violin music for piano, that is, 786.2 (piano music) plus 13872 (arrangements of violin music).

**781.47****Accompaniment**

For treatises, add 147 (the accompaniment notation derived from 781.47) to indicate how to accompany or collaborate on the work, e.g., how to accompany or collaborate on violin music 787.2147.

(Option: For scores, add notation 147 to indicate the presence of accompaniment, e.g., accompanied violin music 787.2147, unaccompanied violin music 787.2.)

**781.6****Traditions of music****Hybrid styles**

Use 781.621–.629 for a hybrid style (a blending or fusion of two or more styles from different traditions of music to create a new style) that originates within and is associated with an ethnic or national group, e.g., a Nigerian style that blends Nigerian folk music and jazz 781.629669. Use the number coming last in 781.63–.69 for other hybrid styles, plus notation 17 from the table under 781.63–.69 if appropriate, e.g., blues-rock 781.661743, third stream music 781.68175.

**Nonclassical musicians**

Comprehensive works on nonclassical musicians (musicians of a tradition other than classical music) are classed in the most specific number that describes their careers. Use numbers in 781.62–.66 and in 781.69 for musicians that are equally known for both their vocal and instrumental work, e.g., Louis Armstrong, a jazz trumpeter, singer, and band leader, 781.65092. Use 782–783 for musicians known primarily for vocal music, e.g., Ella Fitzgerald, a jazz singer, 782.42165092. Use 784–788 for musicians known primarily for instrumental music, e.g., John Coltrane, a jazz tenor-saxophonist, 788.7165092. Add 162–166 or 169 (the traditions-of-music notation derived from 781.62–.66 and 781.69) to the number in 782–788 before adding notation 092 from Table 1.

*See also discussion at 784–788: Add table: 092.*

**781.6 vs. 780, 780.9****World music**

Use 781.6 for music emphasizing specific traditions, e.g., folk music around the world 781.62. Use 780 for music of various traditions from around the world, e.g., an encyclopedia of world music 780.3. Use 780.9 for the music of specific places in the world, e.g., comprehensive works on music of Brazil 780.981. If in doubt, prefer 781.6, 780.9, 780.

**781.62 vs. 780.89****Folk music vs. Music with respect to ethnic and national groups**

Use 781.62 for music that originates within and is associated with an ethnic or national group, e.g., African American music 781.6296073. Use 780.89 for the group in relation to music in general, e.g., a work about African American composers, opera singers, jazz conductors 780.8996073. If in doubt, prefer 781.62.

**781.62 vs. 781.63–.66****Folk and popular music**

Use 781.62 for folk music or popular music that originates within and is associated with an ethnic or national group. Use 781.63–.66 for other popular music. If in doubt, prefer 781.62.

Use [allmusic.com](http://www.allmusic.com/) (<http://www.allmusic.com/>) or a similar online source for help in determining the style of western popular music.

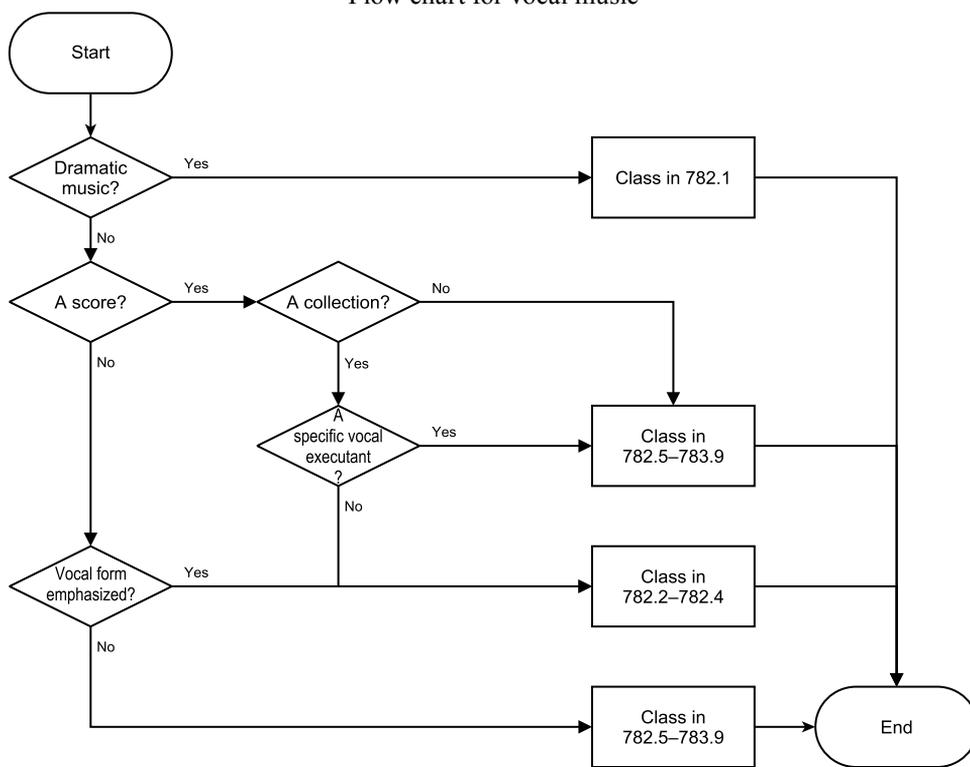
**782****Vocal music**

Use 782.1 for dramatic vocal scores, e.g., opera scores 782.1, scores of musical plays 782.14. Use 782.5–.9 and 783 for nondramatic vocal scores. (Use 792.5 for staging dramatic music.)

For nondramatic vocal music (782.2–.9 and 783), classification is determined by whether an item is a treatise or a recording, on the one hand, or a score, on the other. A person interested in reading about or listening to a singer or a piece of music will usually not know the singer's vocal range or the vocal requirements of that piece of music. In contrast, a person interested in scores will know the type of voice or voices involved, e.g., a song cycle sung by a soprano, or a mass sung by a tenor and male chorus. Therefore, use 782.2–.4 for treatises about and recordings of singers and nondramatic vocal forms, but use 782.5–.9 and 783 for scores and texts.

The following flow chart will help users select the correct section of vocal music.

## Flow chart for vocal music



Examples (from applying the flow chart):

Soprano arias from opera [scores]	782.1
Soprano airs not from opera [scores]	783.66
Sacred songs by sopranos [recordings]	782.25
Women's soprano voice [treatise]	783.66

### Vocal scores

With scores, kind of voice and size of vocal ensemble must be considered. The distinction between 782.5-.9 and 783 is based upon the number of voices per part. Use 782.5-.9 for music having several voices per part (what is usually meant by choral music). Use 783 for music having one voice per part (part songs and solos). Observe the following preference order for scores and parts of nondramatic vocal music:

- Size of vocal ensemble (including solos)
- Type of voice, e.g., male, high, soprano, child's
- Vocal forms

Size of vocal ensemble parallels the primary division in the instrument portion of the schedule. Choral music is analogous to orchestral music (more than one voice/instrument per part in some parts); music for single voices in combination is analogous to chamber music (only one voice/instrument per part); and music for solo voice is analogous to music for solo instrument.

Type of voice also parallels the instrument portion of the schedule, in that specifying the sex and range of the voice is analogous to specifying the kind and type of instrument.

Different kinds of voice are distinguished first by sex and age (women, children, men) and second by range.

For example:

Secular song for male voice choir	782.842
Male voice choir	782.8
Secular song	42 (from 782.42)
Carols for single voices in combination	783.11928
Single voices in combination	783.1
Nondramatic vocal forms	19
Carols	28 (from 782.28)

### 782.1 vs. 792.5, 792.6

#### **Dramatic vocal forms**

Use 782.1 for dramatic vocal forms as a type of vocal music, including such topics as tempos, plots, singers, conducting. Use 792.5 and 792.6 for dramatic vocal forms as a type of stage presentation, including such topics as costumes, sets, direction. For example, use 782.1 for operas as vocal music, 792.5 for staging of operas; use 782.14 for musical plays as vocal music, 792.6 for staging of musical plays. Use 792.509 for an opera house and its productions, e.g., a history of La Scala, Milan 792.5094521. If in doubt, prefer 782.1.

### 784–788

#### **Instruments and their music**

##### **Add table**

092

##### **Biography**

For persons associated with an instrument and its music and for persons associated with the music for the instrument, add notation 092 from Table 1 directly to the number for the instrument and its music, e.g., Nicolò Paganini (a violinist and composer) and Isaac Stern (a violinist) 787.2092. However, for persons interested only in the instrument, add 19 (the instrument notation derived from 784.19) before adding notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., Antonio Stradivari (a violin maker) 787.219092.

For persons associated with a specific tradition of music other than western art music, add 162–166 or 169 (the traditions-of-music notation derived from 781.62–.66 and 781.69) before adding notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., a country music violinist 787.21642092. If the person is associated with more than one tradition, do not add to show the tradition.

### 785.6–.9

#### **Ensembles consisting of instruments from only one instrument group**

Unless other instructions are given, when adding from 786–788 to indicate instrument or instruments, use the most specific number that includes all the instruments in the ensemble, preferring numbers for comprehensive works on kinds of instruments (whether explicit or implied) and taking into account only which kinds of instruments are in the ensemble, without taking into account whether one kind of instrument predominates.

Examples (without accounting for the size of the ensemble):

Music for keyboard ensemble consisting of piano and harpsichord	785.6
Music for percussion ensemble consisting of snare drums, hand bells, cymbal, chimes, and glass harmonica	785.68
Music for string ensemble consisting of 4 violins, 2 violas, and 1 cello	785.7
Music for string ensemble consisting of 2 violins	785.72
Music for plectral instrument ensemble consisting of dulcimer, lute, and Celtic harp	785.77
Music for plectral lute ensemble consisting of mandolin and guitar	785.78
Music for round-backed lute ensemble consisting of mandolin and lute	785.782
Music for flute ensemble consisting of Western concert flute, piccolo, alto flute, and bass flute	785.832
Music for brass ensemble consisting of trumpet, French horn, trombone, and tuba	785.9

The add instructions in the subdivisions of 785.6–9 that say “then add further as instructed under 785.2–9” apply for all ensembles, whether or not the participating instruments approximate the whole of their instrument number in 786–788.

### 791.43, 791.45 vs. 777

#### Motion pictures and television

Use 791.43 and 791.45 for motion pictures and television as art forms and for comprehensive works on producing them. Use 777 for the technical aspects of making motion pictures and videos. For example, use 791.43025 for the use of lighting techniques to enhance the mood of the scene and for a comprehensive work on lighting, but use 777.52 for how to determine what kind of lighting apparatus to use while filming in bright sunlight. If in doubt, prefer 791.43 and 791.45.

### 791.43 vs. 791.45

#### Motion pictures vs. Television

Use the Internet Movie Database (<http://www.imdb.com/>) or a similar online source for help in determining if a production should be treated as a motion picture or a television program. If in doubt, prefer 791.43.

### 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

#### Films, radio programs, television programs, stage productions

A production recorded in a different medium than the original production is classed with the recording, not with the production, e.g., a staged opera recorded for television 791.4572 (a television program), not 792.542 (a staged opera).

### 795.015192 vs. 519.27

#### Games of chance

Use 795.015192 for the probabilities, or “odds,” of winning “games of chance” in the recreational sense, i.e., any games in which chance, not skill, is the most important factor in determining the outcome, e.g., craps, poker, solitaire. Use 519.27 for “games of chance” in the mathematical sense, which are limited to games played by a single

player to determine the optimal policy or strategy of winning the games and are a part of the theory of controlled probabilities. If in doubt, prefer 795.015192.

### 796.08 vs. 796.04

#### Groups of people vs. General kinds of sports and games

Use numbers in 796.08 or notation 08 from Table 1 added to numbers for specific sports or games for works on the participation of specific groups of people if the sports or games are not modified to allow their participation. Use either 796.04 or the number for the modified version if the sports or games have been modified to allow participation of specific groups of people. Numbers for the modified versions of a sport are usually given in the “specific types” or “variants” subdivisions of the sport, e.g., baseball 796.357, Little League baseball 796.35762, indoor baseball 796.3578. If these subdivisions are not provided, use the number for the type of sport as a whole. For example, use 796.3520873 for works on how people who have lost a leg can play golf, as they can usually play without a major change to the rules of golf. However, in order to participate in other sports, the person who has lost a leg may require a wheelchair. Use 796.0456 for comprehensive works on wheelchair sports. Class the wheelchair version of a specific sport with variants of the sport, e.g., wheelchair basketball 796.3238. If in doubt, prefer 796.08 or the number for the specific sport or game with use of notation 08 from Table 1.

The name of a variant of the sport may give the impression that it is for only one type of person when any type can play it. For example, women’s basketball before 1971 was a variant of basketball in which there were six players per team and the three forwards played in the forecourt. Use 796.3238 (*not* 796.323082) for this variant because it can be played by either men or women.

Some sports and games have similar sounding names, but the rules are so different as to create separate, though related, sports and games. For example, American football, Canadian football, and Australian-rules football are similar sports, but they each have their own separate rules and are classed in 796.332, 796.335, and 796.336, respectively.

### 796.15 vs. 629.0460228

#### Play with remote-control vehicles; play with kites vs. Models and miniatures of transportation equipment

Use 796.15 for both play with remote-control model vehicles and for comprehensive works on remote-control model vehicles, e.g., flying and building remote-control model airplanes 796.154. Use 629.0460228 and similar numbers in 620 for the design and construction of model vehicles, e.g., building model airplanes 629.133134. If in doubt, prefer 796.15.

Use 790.133 for comprehensive works on play with all types of model railroads and trains, because most play with model railroads and trains does not involve remote-control vehicles.

## 800

### Literature (Belles-lettres)

This entry uses notation from Table 3 to illustrate the application of principles to various literatures, e.g., “T3—1” is used to discuss poetry in specific literatures rather than “811, 821, 831, 841, etc.” The notation “T3—1” refers to both T3A—1 from Table 3A (individual authors) and T3B—1 from Table 3B (more than one author). Difficulties arise with the notation for T3—8 Miscellaneous writings because the literary period

comes between T3—8 and its various subdivisions. In the entry this form is expressed as T3—8 + the notation for the subdivision, e.g., diaries T3—8 + 03.

### Choice between literature and nonliterary subject

The discipline of literature is restricted to: (1) works of the imagination that are written in the various literary forms, e.g., fiction, poetry; (2) literary criticism and description; (3) literary history and biography. Class works of the imagination intended to delight in 800, but class works that are essentially informational with the subject in other disciplines, regardless of their literary form. For example, class Jonathan Swift's *The Drapier's Letters* as a work on monetary policy in 332.49415 (not as a collection of the author's letters).

Essays, speeches, letters, and diaries are commonly used for nonliterary purposes. If in doubt whether to class a work in one of these forms as literature in 800 or with a subject elsewhere in the schedule, prefer the subject.

Class nonfiction novels that use the techniques of fiction writing to tell the story of actual people and actual events as follows. Class an account of a true event or series of events using the names of the people involved, not inventing characters or distorting facts to enhance an intended artistic effect, and not going beyond the information available to the author from investigation and interviews, in the discipline appropriate to the facts described. For example, class Truman Capote's *In Cold Blood*, a true account of a multiple murder, in 364.1523. If, however, the author goes beyond what is learned from investigation and interviews in describing conversations, feelings, thoughts, or states of mind of the people depicted in the book, class the work as fiction, e.g., Norman Mailer's *The Executioner's Song* 813.54. If in doubt, class as fiction.

Other kinds of fiction, and poetry and drama, are sometimes used as vehicles for conveying factual information, e.g., biographies written in verse, fiction employed to teach the fundamentals of mathematics. Use 800 for poetry, drama, and fiction unless the form is incidental to the explanation of a specific subject, e.g., Harvey's *Circulation of the Blood* (written in Latin verse) 612.13 (not 871.04). Make an exception for certain ancient works that have long been classed as literature regardless of their content, e.g., Hesiod's *Works and Days* 881.01 (not 630), even though it deals with practical agriculture.

Class a collection of literary texts or excerpts from literary texts that is meant to serve as a model for studying another discipline with the discipline illustrated. For example, use 307 for a collection meant to explain what a community is.

Class a literary study of nonliterary works in 809.935, e.g., the Bible as literature 809.93522.

### Language

Class literary works by language, not by country of origin. However, class works in English originating in North America, South America, Hawaii, and geographically associated islands in 810 (not 820). Class works in English from Europe, Africa, Asia, Australia, and New Zealand, and comprehensive works on English literature in 820. In certain cases, use Table 3C to indicate country of origin. (See also discussion at T3C—93—99.)

Class literary works in the language in which they were originally written, e.g., an English translation of a work originally written in Spanish 860 (not 820).

*Literature of two or more languages*

Works treating literature of two or more languages are usually collections or works of criticism. If two languages are involved, use the number coming first in 820–890, except where there are different instructions. For example, use 820 (*not* 860) for English and Spanish, but use 880 (*not* 870) for Greek and Latin. If more than two languages are involved, but the languages all belong to a particular language family, use the most specific number that will contain all the languages. For example, use 830 for a work covering English, German, and Dutch, since they are all Germanic languages. Do not use 820–890 for broad groupings such as Indo-European literature. For example, use 808 for collections covering English, French, and Russian (all Indo-European languages), 809 for criticism, 800 for a combination of collections and criticism. Similarly, use 800, 808, or 809 for a work about literature in more than two languages when the languages are unrelated except that they belong to a broad grouping such as nonwestern or Asian languages. For example, use 808 (*not* 890) for a collection of Arabic, Persian, and Turkish literary texts. If any one language is predominant, class with that language.

**Literary form**

In literature there are two basic modes of expression: poetry and prose. Class drama, whether in poetry or prose, with drama in T3—2. Class epigrams with miscellaneous writings in T3—8 + 02, regardless of mode. Class works in other forms with poetry in T3—1 if written in verse. Class prose works in T3—3 Fiction, T3—4 Essays, T3—5 Speeches, T3—6 Letters, and T3—8 Miscellaneous writings. Use the subdivision for prose literature, T3—8 + 08, only for prose works in more than one literary form. Class prose works in a specific form with the form.

Use notation 7 Humor and satire only for collections in, or works of criticism about, two or more forms including both verse and prose, because humor and satire are categories of writing rather than a form or mode. Class literary works exhibiting humor and satire in a particular form (T3—1–6 and T3—8) with the form. Table 3A for individual authors has no notation parallel to T3B—7; class a collection of works by an individual author in more than one form exhibiting humor and satire in T3A—8 + 09.

**Literary period**

Use the period tables supplied under various languages for the literature of that language from throughout the world and for the literatures of individual countries. For example, use 843.912 for French-language fiction of the early 20th century from throughout the world and for French-language fiction of the early 20th century from France. Use the same periods for affiliated literatures (literatures in the same language, but from countries other than the traditional homeland), e.g., use 843.912 for Belgian, Swiss, Canadian, and Senegalese French-language fiction of the early 20th century. (Optional periods are sometimes provided for use with a country other than the traditional homeland of the literature if some special device is used to set such literature apart from the literature in general. The options are described at 810–890 in the schedule.) In certain cases, use Table 3C to indicate country of origin of affiliated literatures. (*See also discussion at T3C—93–99.*)

In literary period tables, the name for a particular century is given if the span of years in the heading is less than 75 years, e.g., the 19th century in English literature is given in a class-here note under notation 8 Victorian period, 1837–1899, in the period table for English literature at 821–828. The name for the century is usually not given if the span of years in the heading is 75 or more years, e.g., the 20th century in English literature

is not given under notation 91, which covers the span 1900–1999, in the period table for English literature.

### Other elements

If appropriate, add notation 08 from Table 3B (or notation 08 or 008 from T3B—1008, notation 08 from table under T3B—102–107) for collections of works by or about more than one author, and notation 09 from Table 3B (or notation 09 or 009 from T3B—1009, notation 09 from table under T3B—102–107) for history, description, and critical appraisal of works of more than one author. Use this notation both on its own and also in order to add notation from Table 3C, to express features such as literary themes or subjects, literary elements (e.g., dialogue), literary qualities (e.g., romanticism), and specific kinds of persons for whom or by whom the literature is written.

### Literary criticism

Class criticism with the literature being criticized. Class criticism of a specific work in the same number as the work itself, e.g., a critical analysis of Hemingway's *For Whom the Bell Tolls* 813.52. Class general criticism of the work of an author in the comprehensive number for the author, e.g., criticism of Hemingway 813.52.

Use 809 and notation 09 from Table 3B (or notation 09 or 009 from T3B—1009, notation 09 from table under T3B—102–107) for criticism of all kinds of literature except the works of individual authors. Use 809 for criticism of several literatures as a whole, 809.3 for criticism of fiction from several literatures. Use 810.9 for criticism of the English-language literature of the United States in general, 813.009 for criticism of English-language fiction of the United States in general, 813.5209 for criticism of early 20th-century American fiction in English.

Use 809.1–.7 for criticism of literature in a specific form from more than two literatures. Use 808.1–.7 for critical works in which the emphasis is on the various forms of literature as such, not on the various authors and literatures that may be used as examples. If in doubt between 808.1–.7 and 809.1–.7, prefer 809.1–.7.

Use 801.95 for the theory and technique of literary criticism. Use 808.1–.7 for the theory and technique of criticism of specific literary forms. If in doubt between 801.95 and 808.1–.7, prefer 801.95.

Class appreciation of literature in the same manner as other criticism.

Class textual criticism of literature in the same manner as other criticism. However, use 801.959 (*not* 808.1–.7) for the theory and technique of textual criticism of specific literary forms.

Class criticism of criticism with the criticism being criticized and hence with the original subject of criticism, e.g., criticism of Hemingway and a criticism of that criticism by a third person, both 813.52.

Class works about critics in the same manner as works about other authors, i.e., class critics with the kind of literature that they chiefly criticize, e.g., a man who devoted the major part of his life to criticizing the works of Hemingway 813.52; a critic of Spanish literature 860.9.

Class criticism and critics with the language of the literature they are criticizing, not with the language in which the criticism is written, e.g., a French critic writing in French but criticizing American literature 810.9.

### Adaptations

An adaptation may alter the form of a work or modify the content to such an extent in language, scope, or level of presentation that it can no longer be considered a version of the original. Class an adaptation in the number appropriate to the adaptation, e.g., Lamb's *Tales from Shakespeare* 823.7.

However, class a prose translation of poetry (which is merely a change in mode) in the number for the original work, e.g., Dante's *Divine Comedy* translated into German prose 851.1.

### Excerpts

Class a collection of excerpts from different literary works as a collection.

### 800, T3C—362 vs. 398.245, 590, 636

#### Literature (Belles-lettres) and pets as specific subjects in literature vs. Folk literature of animals vs. Animals vs. Animal husbandry

Class literary accounts of animals, whether fictional or true, with the appropriate form in literature, e.g., poetry. Use subdivisions of T3—8 Miscellaneous writings for literary accounts of actual animals in the form of anecdotes or personal reminiscences, T3—8 + 02 for anecdotes, T3—8 + 03 for reminiscences, diaries, journals; or T3—8 + 07 for works without identifiable literary form.

Use T3C—362 for collections of literary works that treat pets as a specific subject or theme, e.g., a collection of English fiction about cats 823.00803629752.

Class works about animals intended to contribute to some discipline other than literature in the relevant discipline. Use 398.245 for folk literature of animals. Use 590 for animal stories in which the author's emphasis is on the habits and behavior of the animal. Use 636 where the emphasis is on the care and training of the animal.

If in doubt, prefer 800.

### 800 vs. 398.2

#### Literature (Belles-lettres) vs. Folk literature

Folk literature is anonymous, having been handed down by word of mouth from one generation to the next. In other words, folk literature is anonymous because it comes from an oral tradition. Folk literature can be collected and retold, e.g., folk tales collected and retold by Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm; but those who collect and retell are not the authors of the literature. Use 398.2 for folk literature.

Works whose authors are unknown only because the authors chose to publish under a pseudonym are not considered to be folk literature. Use 800 for literary works by pseudonymous authors.

Anonymous classics are not considered to be folk literature. Although their authorship is unknown and many of them came from an oral tradition, such works have a recognized literary merit and form part of the literary canon. Use 800 for them, e.g., *Njáls Saga* 839.63, *Mort le Roi Artu (Mort Artu)* 843.1, *Mabinogion* 891.6631. An aid in identifying anonymous classics in European literatures is *Anonymous Classics: A List of Uniform Headings for European Literatures*, 2nd ed. revised by the IFLA Working Group on

Anonymous Classics (<http://bibpurl.oclc.org/web/9557>). Not all of these anonymous classics are literary; some need to be classed with the subject, especially in religion.

Works by known authors, even if in a genre that is traditional for folk literature or about typical folk literary topics, are not considered to be folk literature. Use 800 for them, e.g., fairy tales by Hans Christian Andersen 839.8136; *Inner City Nursery Rhymes* by Barbara Sillars Harvey 811.54, novels by Keri Arthur about werewolves and vampires 823.92.

Some legendary or historical events or themes form the basis for original works in many literatures, periods, and forms, e.g., the search for the Holy Grail or the battle of Roland with the Saracens. Medieval works involving them are often anonymous. Class each retelling of the event or theme with the literature, form, and period in which it was written, e.g., Mary Stewart's Merlin trilogy 823.914. Use 809.933 for works about a specific theme treated in several literatures.

If in doubt, prefer 800.

## 808.8

### Preference order for more than two literatures

Here are examples illustrating the preference order for collections of texts in more than one form from more than two literatures. The preference order is the same for criticism (809).

1. Specific themes and subjects, e.g., 808.80382 (religion)
2. Specific elements, e.g., 808.8024 (plot)
3. Specific qualities, e.g., 808.8013 (idealism)
4. For and by specific kinds of persons, e.g., 808.899282 (children)
5. Period, e.g., 808.80033 (18th century)

*See also discussion at Table 3B: Preference order; also at T3B—1; also at T3B—2; also at T3B—3.*

## 808.81–.88 and 809.1–.7

### Specific kinds of poetry, drama, fiction, speeches

The add instructions at 808.812–.818 Specific kinds of poetry, which allow the addition of the numbers following —10 in notation 102–107 from Table 3B, also permit further addition at that point, since numbers in the range T3B—102–107 have a footnote that leads to an add table under a centered entry: “Add as instructed under T3B—102–107.”

Do not add notation 08 Collections of literary texts from the add table under T3B—102–107 by itself, since it would be redundant because 808.8 already means collections of literary texts, e.g., collections of narrative poetry 808.813 (*not* 808.81308). However, add notation 08 if it serves as a link for adding further notation from Table 3C, e.g., collections of narrative poetry about political themes 808.813083581.

Apply the same policy for collections of specific kinds of drama, fiction, and speeches, e.g., a collection of short stories 808.831 (*not* 808.83108), but a collection of short stories about political themes 808.831083581.

Apply a similar policy for history and criticism of specific kinds of poetry, drama, fiction, speeches. Do not add notation 09 History, description, critical appraisal by itself to numbers in 809 History, description, critical appraisal of more than two literatures, e.g., history and criticism of narrative poetry 809.13 (*not* 809.1309). However, add notation 09 if it serves as a link for adding further notation from Table 3C, e.g., history and criticism of narrative poetry about political themes 809.13093581.

### 808.82 vs. 791.437, 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

#### Texts of plays vs. Production scripts

Use 808.82 and similar numbers built with T3A—2 or T3B—2 for texts of plays. Use 791.437, 791.447, 791.457, and 792.9 for production scripts. A production script contains a variety of directions, e.g., where the furniture is to be placed, where the actors are to stand. For example, use 812.52 for the text of Thornton Wilder's *Our Town*, but use 792.92 for the production script for a staged production of *Our Town*. If in doubt, prefer 808.82 and similar numbers.

## 900

### History

Use 900 for the story of events that have transpired, or an account of the conditions that have prevailed, in a particular place or region. Use 001–899 for the history of a specific subject, e.g., a history of political developments (such as internal developments in government) without respect to their effect upon the larger society and place where they occur 320.9, history of economic events in France 330.944, history of warfare 355.0209, history of clocks 681.11309.

The general arrangement of Table 2, which determines the number assigned to the history of a particular place, is geographic rather than by political units, because although political affiliation may change, position on the earth's surface does not, e.g., history of Hawaii 996.9 under Oceania (*not* under United States history).

History includes the present (situation and conditions), but not the future (projected events). Use 303.49 for projected events.

#### Historic events vs. nonhistoric events

Depending upon their impact, class specific events either in 900 or in specific disciplines in 001–899. Use 930–990 for events that are important enough to affect the general social life and history of the place, regardless of any discipline involved, e.g., the sinking of the *Lusitania* 940.4514; the assassination of Abraham Lincoln 973.7092; the 1906 San Francisco earthquake 979.461051.

Use 001–899 for the history of the discipline for other specific events. For example, use 364 for the history of a crime, e.g., the Whitechapel murders committed by Jack the Ripper 364.15232. Use 796–799 for a sporting accident, e.g., a fatal accident during an automobile race 796.72.

If in doubt about the impact of the event, prefer 900.

However, take into account the author's purpose or point of view. For example, use 364.1524092 (*not* 973.922092) for a work about the assassination of John F. Kennedy that focuses on the modus operandi of the crime, the detective work involved in solving it, or both.

Use 300 for events that emphasize social aspects. Use 363 (*not* any other discipline involved) if safety factors are stressed, e.g., use 363.12365 for a study of the wreck of the Andrea Doria to determine what the causes of the accident were or what preventive measures might be mandated as a result of the incident.

Use 001–899 for collected accounts of events pertaining to one discipline, e.g., scientific travel 508. Use 904 for collected events without such focus.

## **909, 930–990 vs. 320**

### **History and politics**

#### **Political history**

Use 909 and 930–990 for political history that emphasizes major political events typified by the “battles, kings, and dates” school of history. Use 320.9 for political history that emphasizes the mechanics of give and take of political forces and movements and their internal development. Use 909 and 930–990 if the forces and movements come to power or bring about major changes in society. If in doubt, prefer 909 and 930–990.

*See also discussion at 909, 930–990 vs. 320.4, 321, 321.09.*

#### **Political activities**

Use 909 and 930–990 for the sum total of political activity of a specific period or place. Use 320 for specific important political activities presented in terms of the discipline political science, but consider 909 and 930–990 whenever an activity is discussed in a manner that highlights its influence on general events. Use 909 and 930–990 for important events and leaders with wide-ranging responsibilities, unless considered primarily in the context of a specific subject. If in doubt, prefer 909 and 930–990.

Special consideration of 320.9, 324, and 328 follows:

320.9: Use 320.9 for habitual activities and styles of leading political figures as a group, and activities reflecting the adjustment of political forces or the status of political parties and movements. Use 909 and 930–990 for the activities analyzed in terms of their effect on general events.

324: Use 324.2 for party histories; use 324.5 and 324.24–.29, plus notation 015, for histories of nomination campaigns; and use 324.9 for histories of election campaigns, but only when they treat largely internal events of the parties and campaigns, or report winners, losers, and votes. Use 930–990 for the history of how a party or candidate came to power (or almost did), or how party and campaign events move nations (or other areas) in certain directions.

328: Use 328.4–.9 for histories of specific legislative bodies, but only when they are largely limited to what happened within or to the bodies, without significant consideration of what the legislative body did for the political unit it served. Use 328 for reports of proceedings of a legislature (i.e., its motions, debates, actions). Use 930–990 for the accomplishments of a given legislative session, but use 328 if the work concentrates on the body’s internal history.

## **909, 930–990 vs. 320.4, 321, 321.09**

### **Change of government**

Use 909 and 930–990 for the history of changes in government or for particular coups and revolutions in specific areas, e.g., revolutions in the 20th century 909.82, the Rus-

sian Revolution 947.0841. Use 320.4 for political treatment of systems of government that precede or follow changes in a specific country, e.g., the government of the Soviet Union after the 1917 revolution 320.4470904. Use 321 numbers other than 321.09 for works on particular systems or kinds of systems and general political treatment of a specific system of government preceding or following changes, e.g., new republics 321.86. Use 321.09 primarily for studies of *the process* of change, rather than for works on particular changes. If in doubt, prefer in the following order: 909 or 930–990; 320.4; all subdivisions of 321 except 321.09; 321.09.

## 909, 930–990 vs. 910

### History vs. Geography and travel

Use 909 or 930–990 if a work deals with both geography and civilization or with both travel and civilization. However, use 910 if the treatment of geography or travel is predominant. If in doubt, prefer 909 or 930–990

Use 910.02 or 913–919, plus notation 02 from table under 913–919, if the work deals only with the description of the physical earth.

## 913–919

### Geography of and travel in ancient world and specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds

#### Historic sites and buildings

Works describing historic sites and buildings should be classed with the discipline that is emphasized.

Class a work about a building or historic site that has or had a specific purpose with the purpose of the building or site unless some other discipline is emphasized, e.g., a work about a Benedictine monastery in Lower Austria that emphasizes the history of the religious order in that place 271.1043612, a guide to the New York Stock Exchange building 332.64273. Class works about buildings that are associated with the life of an individual with the biography number for that person, e.g., the home of Thomas Wolfe in Asheville, North Carolina 813.52. Class works about a site that is famous for a historic event with the history of the event, e.g., Gettysburg National Military Park 973.7349.

Use 720.9 or 725–728 for works on a building or buildings in an area that emphasize the architecture of the building or buildings, e.g., a work on a church in Paris that emphasizes architectural history 726.50944361. Also use 725–728 for comprehensive works on the art history of a building and its contents, including the architecture of the building and the art works it contains.

Use 930–990 for a work that describes the buildings in an area for the purpose of illustrating the history of the area. (See the discussion at 930–990: Historic preservation.)

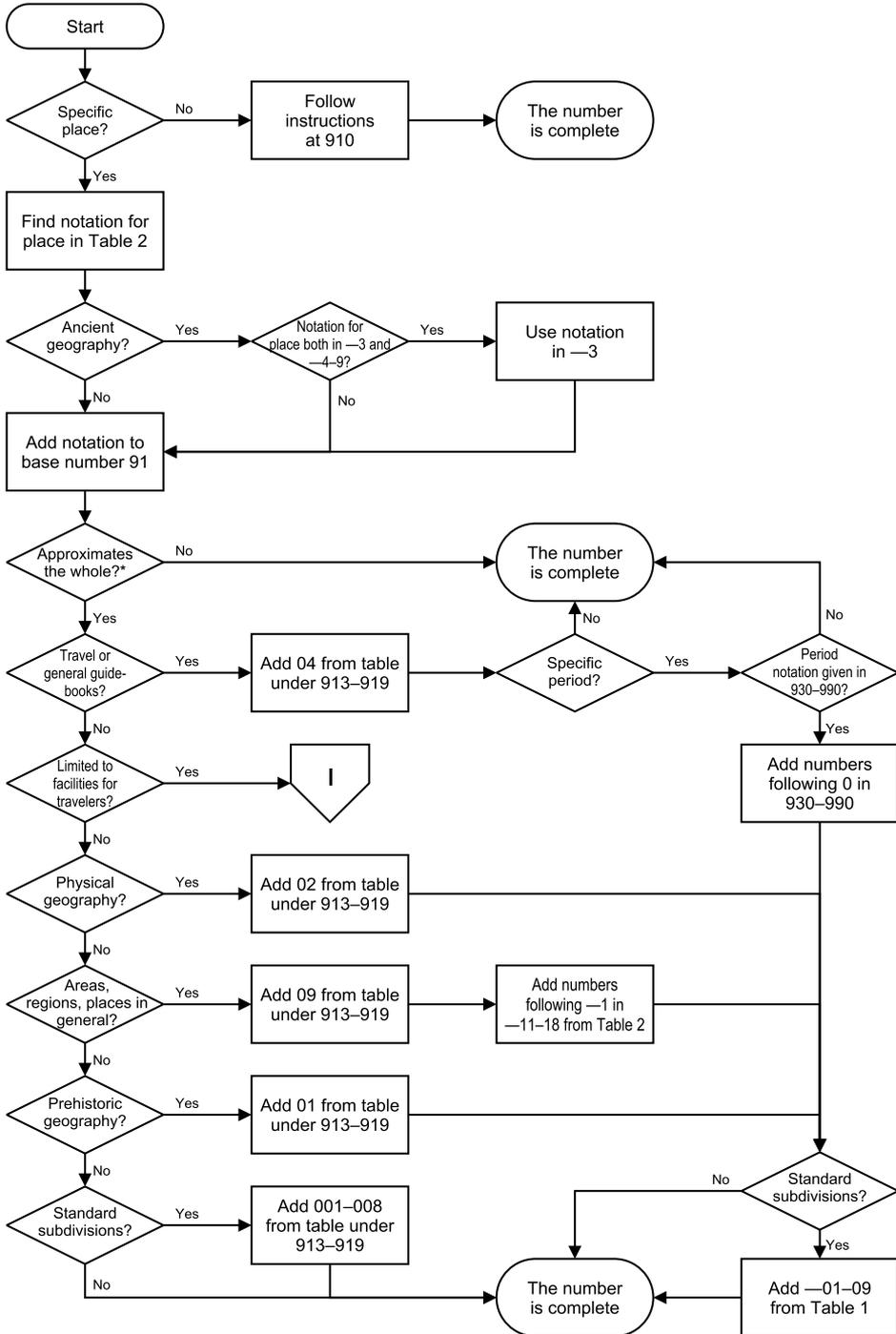
Use 913–919 for works when no specific purpose or discipline is evident. (See the discussion below under 04 Travel on Guidebooks.)

*See also discussion at 333.7–.9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990.*

#### Add table

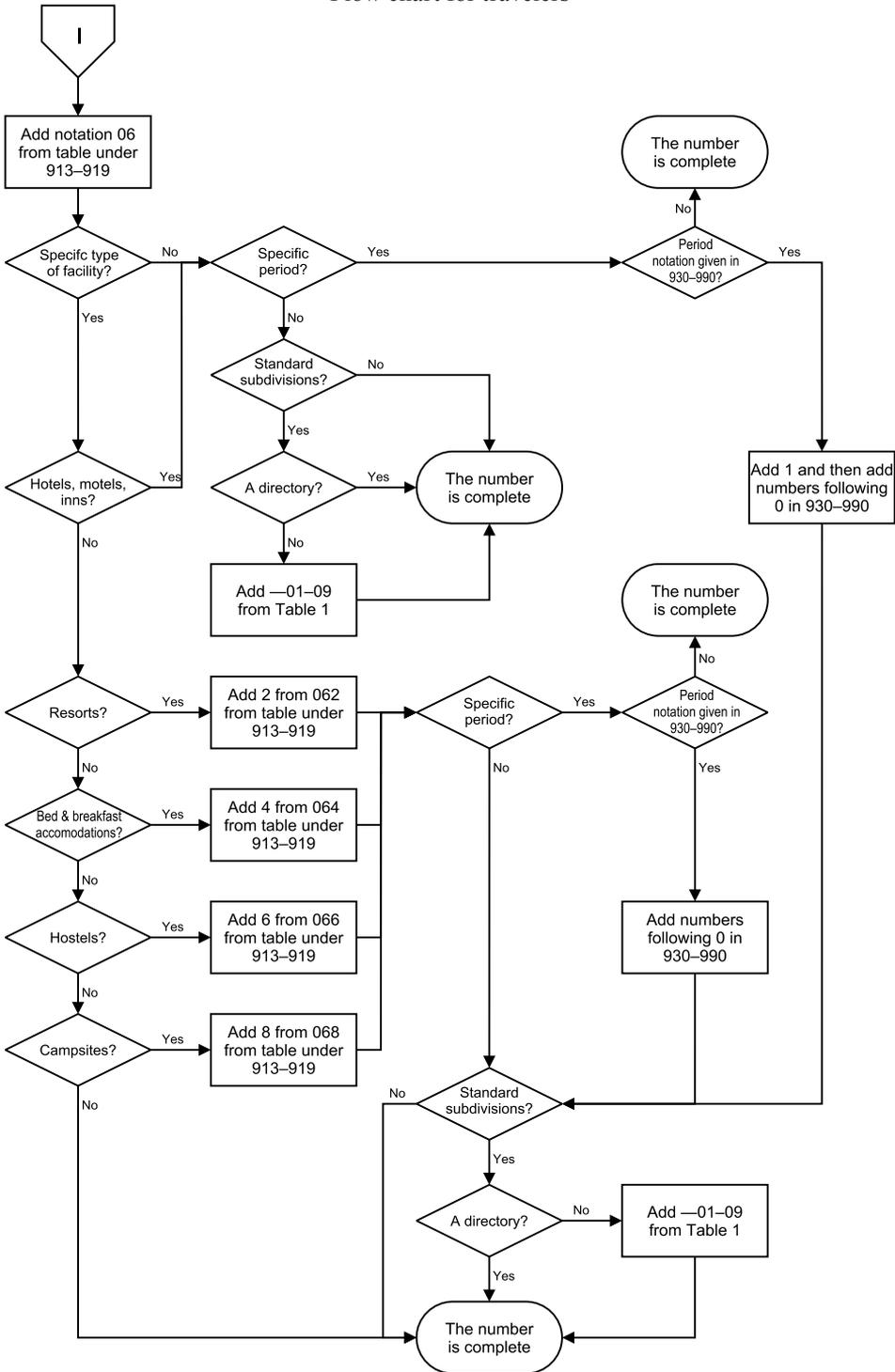
The following flow chart is offered as an aid to building numbers and as a supplement to the detailed directions at 913–919.

Flow chart for geography and travel



\*See also Introduction and Glossary for information about “Approximates the whole”

Flow chart for travelers



04

**Travel**

Use 04 for accounts of travel that emphasize events of the trip, places stopped at, accommodations, modes of transportation. If the work is purely a description of the area visited, with none, or very few, of these accompaniments, use subdivision 02 for physical geography. Use 930–990 for civilization and social conditions of the place visited and for works by a person who has lived in the area for several years.

Works on travel normally do not cover the whole of any given area. Class accounts according to the widest span covered, e.g., travel from Marseilles to Paris 914.404, travel from New York to San Francisco 917.304, travel in 1981 from New York City to Buffalo, New York 917.470443. Standard subdivisions may be added.

**Discovery and exploration**

Use 04 for works describing excursions into previously unknown or little known areas, e.g., the Lewis and Clark expedition 917.8042, Byrd's expedition to the South Pole 919.8904. However, use 930–990 if the initial exploration of a place forms an important part of its early history, e.g., early exploration of North America 970.01.

Use 930.1 for accounts of archaeological expeditions.

**Guidebooks**

A guidebook can be either a residential guidebook (i.e., a guide for the permanent resident or long-term visitor) or a tourist guidebook (i.e., a guide for the short-term visitor). Residential guidebooks cover not only the tourist attractions but also the other parts of the area, such as banks, churches, grocery stores, real estate agencies, and residential neighborhoods, and normally give a snapshot view of the history of the area. Use 940–990, plus the notation for the period during which it was written, for a residential guidebook, e.g., use 975.3042 for a residential guidebook to Washington, D.C., written in 2003. Tourist guidebooks provide detailed information about the area through which tourists travel, telling them what to see, where to stay, and where to eat. If in doubt whether the book is a residential or a tourist guidebook, class it as a tourist guidebook.

Use 913–919, plus notation 04 from the table at 913–919, for tourist guidebooks, e.g., guidebooks to the United States 917.304. For individual guidebooks, add the notation for the historical period during which it was written, e.g., use 917.530442 for a tourist guidebook to Washington, D.C., written in 2003. Use 913 for guidebooks written before ca. 499, e.g., use 913.85049 for Pausanias' guide to Attica written ca. 130. Use the corresponding number in 914–919 for modern guidebooks to ancient areas, e.g., a 2003 guide to the ruins of Rome 914.56320493.

A guidebook that is limited to an aspect of the trip is classed with that aspect, e.g., a guide to London's underground rail system 388.4209421, restaurants of Hawaii 647.95969, lodgings for tourists in London 914.2106, bed and breakfast establishments of London 914.21064. In addition, guidebooks emphasizing a specific subject are classed with the subject, e.g., a guidebook to holy places in Spain 263.04246, a skiing guide to Aspen, Colorado 796.930978843. (For guidebooks to historic sites and buildings, see the discussion in the section above, *Historic sites and buildings*.)

Use the number for the attraction in 001–999 for a guidebook to a locality that is usually visited for only one type of attraction. For example, most people go to Orlando,

Florida, in order to visit its theme parks: Walt Disney World, Sea World of Florida, and Universal Studios Florida. Therefore, use 791.06875924 for both guidebooks to the theme parks and to Orlando in general. However, use 913–919, plus notation 04 from the table at 913–919, for a guidebook that covers more than one locality, e.g., a guide to central Florida that covers not only Orlando but also Cape Canaveral, Daytona Beach, and Tampa 917.59204.

*See also discussion at 333.7–.9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990; also at 913–919 vs. 796.51.*

### Biography

Add notation 092 from Table 1 to subdivisions 041–049 for biographies of discoverers, explorers, and travelers, but not for general geographers nor for first-person accounts of travel. Use the area without further subdivision for biographies of general geographers. Use subdivisions 041–049 for first-person accounts of travel, but do not add notation 092.

#### 913–919 vs. 796.51

##### Walkers' guides

Walkers' guides can be written for either the hiker or the tourist. Both types of guides give detailed instructions on how to get from point A to point B, e.g., at the fork turn left, and a general description of the route to help the walker to choose one route over another, such as distance, what can be seen. Guides for the tourist also give detailed description of things en route, e.g., the type of vegetation, the history of the wayside shrine. Use 913–919, plus notation 04 from the table at 913–919, for guides for the tourist and for walking guides to an urban area, e.g., walking guides to San Francisco 917.946104. Use 796.51 for guides for the hiker in non-urban areas. If in doubt, prefer 913–919.

Use 001–999 for a guide limited to one topic, e.g., a walker's guide to the geology of Yosemite National Park 557.9447, a walking tour of the skyscrapers of San Francisco 720.4830979461.

#### 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362

##### **Biography as a discipline with respect to groups of people; general collections of biography by groups of people with specific attributes vs. Groups of people and social problems of and services to groups of people**

Use 920.008 for collected biographies of a social group. However, use 305 or 306, plus notation 0922 from Table 1, for biographies that focus on the sociological aspects of the group. Use 362, plus notation 0922 from Table 1, for biographies that focus on the social problems of a group and their solutions. If in doubt, prefer 920.008.

For example, use 920.0086642 for a collection of biographies of gay men. However, use 306.76620922 if the biographies focus on these men as leaders in the gay-rights movements and or on other sociological aspects. Use 920.00871 for a collection of biographies of famous persons who are blind. However, use 362.410922 if the biographies focus on the problems of being blind and social services provided.

Apply the same policy for collected biographies of members of a specific ethnic or national group; however, use 920.0092 (*not* 920.0089). Apply the same policy also for collected biographies of men and of women; however, use 920.71 and 920.72, respectively (*not* 920.00811 or 920.0082).

**920.009, 920.03–.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–.8, 930–990****Biography vs. History**

Use 920.009 and 920.03–.09 for collected biographies that contain both (a) biographies of historians and public figures who had a significant impact upon the general history of the place or time and (b) biographies of other public figures and/or biographies of persons of various occupations. Use 909.09, 909.1–.8, and 930–990 for collected biographies limited to biographies of historians and public figures who had a significant impact upon the general history of the place or time. For example, use 920.009033 for a collected biography of the famous persons of the 18th century that includes not only biographies of the kings and queens but also biographies of the bishops, scientists, artists, and athletes; 920.04 for a similar biography limited to Europe; and 920.044 for one limited to France. However, use 909.70922 for a collected biography of the heads of state of the 18th century; 940.099 for a collected biography of the kings and queens of Europe; and 944.0099 for a collected biography of the kings and queens of France. If in doubt, prefer 920.009 and 920.03–.09.

**929.2****Family histories**

Do not use numbers that are too specific for family histories, since families disperse from their place of origin. Use the area number for the country in which the family lives, not for the state, province, or smaller area, e.g., the history of a Florida family 929.20973 (*not* 929.209759). Treat England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland as separate countries.

Class a family history with the country in which the family presently lives, not with the country from which the family's ancestors came, e.g., the Duponts, a United States family of French origin, 929.20973 (*not* 929.20944).

Class family histories that give historical information about the area in which the family is located with the history of the area, e.g., prominent families in New York City 974.71.

**930–990****History of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds****Wars**

If most of a war's fighting took place in one region or country, use the number for the history of the region or country. For example, class the War of the Austrian Succession with the history of Europe in 940.2532; class the Vietnam War with the history of Vietnam in 959.7043. Use the number for the history of the country as a whole, even when the war was fought within a limited portion of a country. For example, class the Second Seminole War, which was fought against the Seminole Indians in Florida, with the history of the United States in 973.57 (*not* with the history of Florida in 975.904).

If most of the fighting took place on the high seas, use the number for the history of the participant in whose territorial waters the majority of the battles took place (*not* with the body of water in 909.096). If the majority of the battles took place on the high seas or in territorial waters of a non-participating country or if in doubt as to where the majority took place, use the number for the history of the participant whose number comes later in 930–990. For example, class the Anglo-Dutch Wars, which consisted of naval battles in the North Sea and English Channel between England and the Netherlands, with the

history of the Netherlands in 949.204 (*not* with the history of the North Sea and English Channel in 909.096336 or the history of England in 941.06).

If there was no one place where the majority of the fighting occurred, but the war was fought in the colonies of one or more of the principal participants, use the number for the history of the participant that owned or controlled all or most of the colonies at the end of the war, either the “mother” country of the colonies or the victor of the war. For example, class the Anglo-Spanish War (War of Jenkins’ Ear), which was fought in the Spanish colonies of Panama, Colombia, Cuba, and Florida and in the English colony of Georgia, with the history of Spain in 946.055. Class the Spanish-American War, which was fought in the Spanish colonies of the Philippines, Cuba, and Puerto Rico, which were all owned or controlled by the United States at the end of the war, with the history of the United States in 973.89 (*not* with the history of Spain in 946.074).

If none of the previous rules apply, use the number for the history of the region or country where the war began.

The following wars are exceptions to the above rules:

Franco-German War, 1870–1871, is classed with the history of Germany in 943.082 (*not* with the history of France in 944.07). The war was fought in France between France and Prussia. The political results of the war were the creation of the Third Republic of France (during the war) and the German Empire (at end of the war).

Livonian War, 1557–1582, is classed with the history of Russia in 947.043 (*not* with the history of the Baltic States in 947.9). The war was fought between Russia and the coalition of Denmark, Grand Duchy of Lithuania, Kingdom of Poland (later the Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth), and Sweden for control of Greater Livonia (the territory of the present-day Estonia and Latvia), where the fighting took place.

Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905, is classed with the history of Japan in 952.031 (*not* with the history of Russia in 947.083). The war was fought in Manchuria, China, over Russia’s influence in Korea.

*See also discussion at 333.7–.9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990; also at 930–990 vs. 355.009, 355–359.*

### **Wars: Ongoing wars**

For an ongoing war, use the number for the history of the region or country in which most of the fighting has occurred. For example, when World War II was introduced in Edition 14, most of the fighting had been in Europe; thus, World War II was classed with the history of Europe in 940.53 (*not* with world history in 909.824). If there is no one region or country in which most of the fighting has occurred, use the number for the history of the region or country where the war began.

### **Wars: Collections of wars**

Use the number for the history of the region or the number for the general world history time period for a group of wars discussed together. For example, class comprehensive works on the Crusades with the general historical period of ca. 500–1450/1500 in 909.07. However, class an individual crusade with the history of the region or country where most of the fighting took place. For example, class the First Crusade with the history of the Middle East in 956.014.

### Wars: Battles and other military actions

For specific battles or military actions of a war, use the number for the war, not the number for the place where the action occurred, e.g., class a battle occurring in the Philippines during the Spanish-American War in 973.8937 (*not* with the history of the Philippines in 959.9031), air raids on Tokyo in World War II 940.54252135 (*not* with the history of Tokyo in 952.135033).

Use the number for the overall war even when a series of battles or other military actions of that war can be considered as a war unto themselves, e.g., class the war in Spain (Peninsular War), which is one of the Napoleonic Wars, with the Napoleonic Wars in 940.27 (*not* with the history of Spain in 946.06).

However, use the numbers in the history of the United States, not the numbers in the history of Europe, for the various battles and other military actions in the North American colonies of England and France that are called wars but are aspects of European wars, e.g., class King William's War (North American aspect of the War of the League of Augsburg) with the history of the United States in 973.25 (*not* with the War of the League of Augsburg in 940.2525 or the history of England in 941.068).

When a battle or other military action occurs during the same time period and region of a major war but is not part of that war, use the number for the history of the country in which the fighting took place. For example, class the attempted French invasion of Sardinia in 1793, which took place during the time of the Napoleonic Wars but is not considered part of those wars, with the history of Sardinia in 945.9082 (*not* with the period of the Napoleonic Wars in 940.27). (Note: In 1793, Italy was not a unified country; thus, class this action in the history of Sardinia, not in the history of Italy.)

### Wars: Military units

Use the numbers for military units under history of the particular war for the history of specific military units in that war, e.g., military units in World War I 940.412–.413. Use the number for military operations if there is no specific number for military units, e.g., military units in the Vietnam War 959.70434.

Use 355.3 (or similar numbers in 355–359, e.g., 358.4131, 359.31, 359.933) for comprehensive works on specific military units and for military units in peacetime.

### Wars: Personal narratives

Class personal narratives of participants in a war in the appropriate subdivision of the history numbers for the specific war, e.g., personal narratives of American soldiers in World War II 940.548173. Class narratives that focus on a specific campaign, battle, or other subject with the subject, e.g., a personal account of the Battle of Berlin 940.54213155092, of Axis intelligence operations in World War II 940.5487092.

Class the narrative of a person's experiences during time of war, if it does not focus on the war as such, as biography and not in the number for the war, e.g., an actor's personal experiences of performing during 1940–1942 in Scotland 792.092 (*not* 940.53088792092).

*See also discussion at 930–990: Biography; also at 930–990 vs. 355.009, 355–359.*

### Wars: Occupied countries

Use the war number for the history of the occupation of a country during the time of the war, e.g., occupation of countries in World War II 940.5336. Use 355.49 for military

administration of the government of an occupied country during or following the war. Use 341.66 for international law concerning occupation.

### **Wars: Archaeology**

Class archaeology of wars according to the rules that apply to history of wars. For example, class archaeology of the Gallipoli land campaign of World War I in 940.426 (*not* with the archaeology of the Gallipoli peninsula of Turkey 949.61200909). Add notation 09009 from Table 1 for topics that approximate the whole of the base number, e.g., archaeology of the Western front in World War I 940.414409009. For archaeology of multiple wars not limited to a specific historical period, add notation 00909 from table under 930–990, e.g., archaeology of all the wars in Great Britain 941.00909.

### **Wars: History of an area not with the history of the war**

Three kinds of wartime history are not classed with the history of the war (unless the number for the area covered coincides with the number for the war).

1. Use the number for the area for routine history of the everyday events of an area, even if during wartime, e.g., the history of Maryland during the Civil War 975.203 (*not* 973.709752).
2. Use the number for the history of a place for the effect of military action on the everyday life and civilization of the place, e.g., the effect of Civil War military actions on Maryland 975.203 (*not* 973.709752). However, use the war number for the participation of an area in that war, e.g., Maryland's participation in the Civil War 973.709752 (*not* 975.203).
3. Use the country's history number if there is no emphasis on the country's participation in the war, e.g., a history of Britain during George VI's reign 941.084. However, use the war number if the country's participation is emphasized, e.g., British participation in World War II 940.5341.

### **Other subjects called "wars"**

The term "war" is sometimes applied to a sustained campaign against a problem, or to a period of conflict, tension, and competition between regions or countries. Use the following to class interdisciplinary works on these subjects:

1. A sustained campaign against a problem: Use the number for the problem, e.g., class the War on Crime with crime prevention in 364.4.
2. A period of conflict, tension, and competition between regions or countries: If there are only two countries involved and the countries are within the same region, use the number of the country coming last. If there are more than two countries but all are in the same region, use the number for the region. Otherwise, use the general world history number for the time of the hostility. For example, class the Cold War period of 1947–1991 (the period of conflict, tension, and competition between the United States and the Soviet Union and their allies) with the post World War II period in 909.825.

Also use this instruction to class interdisciplinary works on a war that is both a sustained campaign and a period. For example, class the War on Terrorism (the various military, political, and legal actions taken by the United States and its allies to end international terrorism) with the 2000–2019 period in 909.831.

Unlike military wars, class a specific aspect of this kind of war with the aspect, not with the comprehensive number for the war. For example, class foreign relations between the Soviet Union and the United States during the Cold War with foreign relations in 327.4707309045; class the Korean War with the history of Korea in 951.9042. Class terrorism as a type of social conflict with terrorism as a social problem in 363.325; class the Iraq War, 2003-, with the history of Iraq in 956.70443.

### Historic preservation

Use 363.69 for comprehensive works on historic preservation and lists of preservation projects to be undertaken. However, use 930–990 if the list is primarily devoted to inventorying or describing the sites; use 720 if the list is primarily a description of buildings at the site.

Use 353.77 for administrative annual reports of agencies promoting the preservation of historical sites.

Use 720.288 (or numbers in 721–729, plus notation 0288 from Table 1) for works on historic preservation in an architectural context.

*See also discussion at 333.7–.9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990.*

### Biography

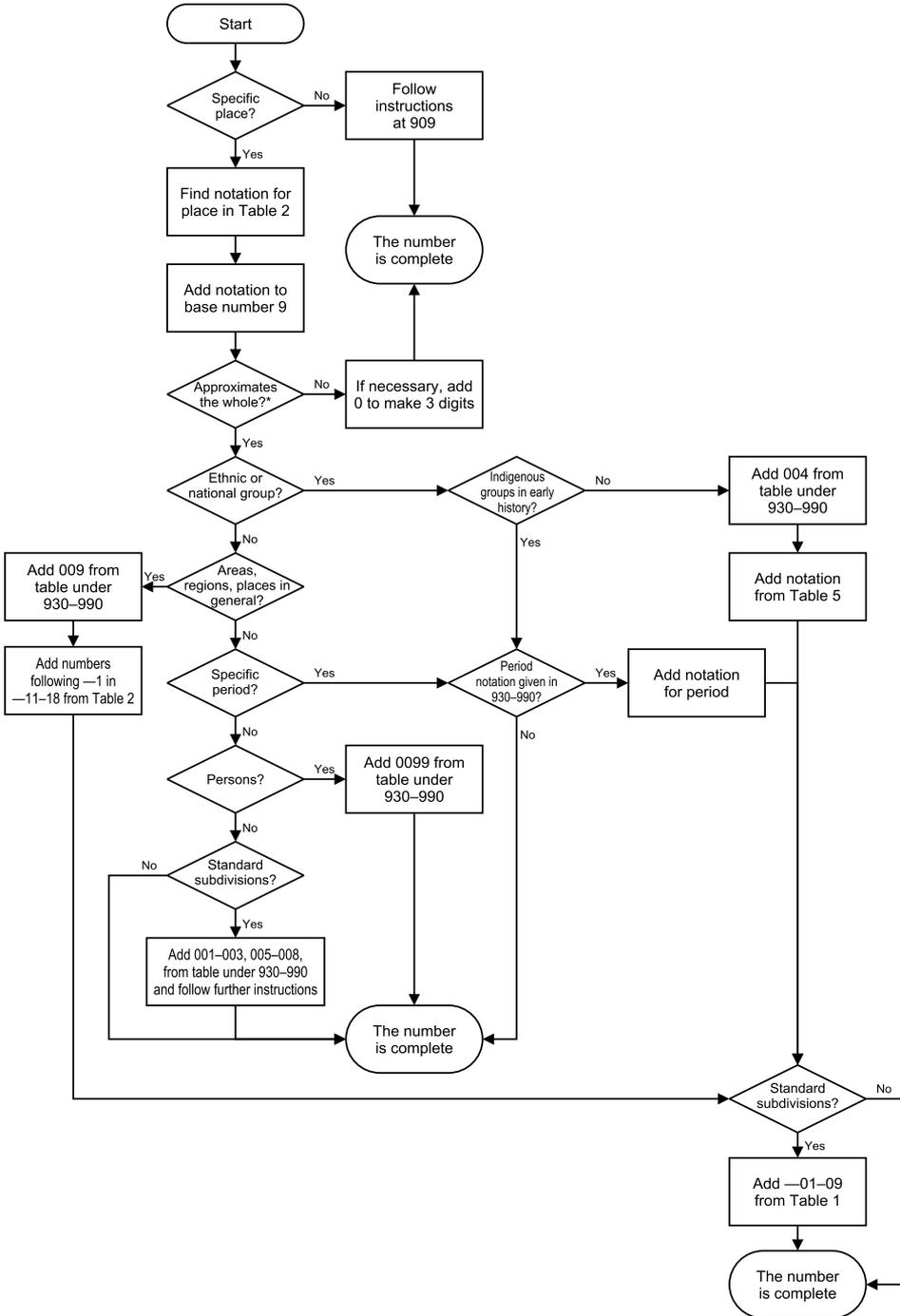
Add notation 092 from Table 1 to subdivisions 01–09 for biographies of persons who lived during the historical period and also for biographies of historians and historiographers of that period, e.g., biographies of Abraham Lincoln and of Bruce Catton, Civil War historian, 973.7092. Add notation 092 even if the life span of the person or the time during which the person impacted upon the history of the country or locality does not approximate the whole of the period, e.g., biography of Rajiv Gandhi 954.052092. Use subdivision 0099 (which is limited to collected treatment) *only* for works not limited to a specific period, e.g., biographies of the kings and queens of Great Britain 941.0099. If subdivisions 01–09 for historical periods are not given in the schedule, do not add subdivision 0099 either for collected biographies limited to a specific period or for individual biographies, e.g., biographies of the 20th-century princes and princesses of Monaco and a biography of Grace, Princess of Monaco 944.949 (*not* 944.9490099). However, add subdivision 0099 for collected biographies not limited to a specific period, e.g., biographies of the princes and princesses of Monaco 944.9490099. Use subdivision 007202 for biographies of historians and historiographers whose works are not limited to a specific period, e.g., biographies of historians of British history 941.007202.

*See also discussion at T1–092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03–.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–.8, 930–990.*

### Add table

The following flow chart is offered as an aid to building numbers and as a supplement to the detailed instructions at 930–990.

Flow chart for history



\*See also Introduction and Glossary for information about “Approximates the whole”

## 01–09

## Historical periods

The starting and finishing dates of historical period subdivisions usually mark significant events, which rarely occurred on either January 1 or December 31. The year during which the event occurred will therefore normally be given as both the finishing date of one period and the starting date of the next period. For example, 1861, the year when Kansas became a state, appears at both 978.102 Territorial period, 1803–1861 and 978.103 Statehood period, 1861–. Similarly, 1945, the year when World War II ended, appears at both 978.1032 [Kansas during] 1918–1945 and 978.1033 [Kansas during] 1945–.

When adding standard subdivisions to the historical periods, use notation 01–09 from Table 1 (*not* 001–009 from the table under 930–990). For example, use notation 09009 Archaeology from Table 1 (*not* 00909 Archaeology from the table under 930–990), e.g., 937.0209009 archaeology of Roman Republic. However, do not use T1–089 and T1–091, since the provisions for them given at 004 and 0091–0098 in the table under 930–990 take precedence over provisions for historical periods.

**Add table: Centuries**

The starting and finishing dates of historical period subdivisions may mark centuries or decades rather than significant events in the history of the area. Since such periods start on January 1 and end on December 31, the year either beginning or ending the period will appear in only one heading, e.g., 978.02 [Western United States during] 1800–1899 and 978.03 [Western United States during] 1900–. (The DDC uses the convention that a century begins with the year 00 and ends with the year 99.) In 940–990, the name for a particular century is given if the span of years in the heading is less than 75 years, e.g., the 15th century in German history is given in a class-here note at 943.028 Reigns of Albert II and Frederick III, 1438–1493. The name for the century is not usually given if the span of years in the heading is 75 or more years, e.g., the 17th century is not given at 943.04 [Germany during] 1618–1705. However, if the span in the heading covers three centuries, and the first and third century are given in the including note, the middle century is given in the class-here note, e.g., the 947.03 entry of Russian history has 1240–1462 in the heading, the 13th and 15th centuries in the including note, and the 14th century in the class here note.

**930–990 vs. 355.009, 355–359****Military topics and war**

Use 930–990 for works on military history that deal with the outcome of significant events in wars, e.g., the use of tanks on the Eastern Front and how their use affected various battles 940.54217. Use the history standard subdivisions in 355–359 for works emphasizing military history or topics without consideration of the general course of a war, e.g., changes in tank tactics during the course of World War II 358.18409044. If in doubt between 930–990 and 355–359, prefer 930–990.

*See also discussion at 930–990: Wars.*

**Persons**

Use 930–990 for comprehensive works on soldiers chiefly associated with the history of a specific war, e.g., William Tecumseh Sherman 973.73092. Use 355.0092 for com-

prehensive works on soldiers associated with more than one war, or who had long and varied careers, e.g., Douglas MacArthur. If in doubt, prefer 930–990.

**941****History of the British Isles**

Use 941 for works on the United Kingdom (England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland), a political entity, and on Great Britain (England, Wales, and Scotland), a geographic entity. Use 942 only for works dealing with England alone, or with England and Wales. Histories of the period since 1603 (or including this period) will seldom deal with England or England and Wales alone. Histories of the period before 1603 may deal with England or England and Wales alone. Works on the civilization of this area may deal with any combination. Use 941 for the following combinations of two areas: England and Scotland, England and Ireland, Ireland and Wales.